

PA 2087

.B93

1906

Copy 1

# ATIN LESSONS

BURKE  
AND  
NEWTON



Class PA 2087

Book B 93

Copyright N<sup>o</sup> 1906

**COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.**











# LATIN LESSONS

BY

EDMUND BURKE

AND

HOMER C. NEWTON

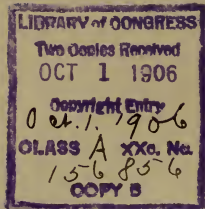
INSTRUCTORS IN LATIN IN THE COLLEGE OF THE  
CITY OF NEW YORK

2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10

The Athenæum Press

GINN & COMPANY • PRO-  
PRIETORS • BOSTON • U.S.A.

PA2087  
B93  
1906



COPYRIGHT, 1905, 1906, BY  
EDMUND BURKE AND HOMER C. NEWTON

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

E.W.F. man 22-10,

## P R E F A C E

This book has been prepared because of what the authors believe to be an increasing desire for a lesson book for parallel use with a Latin grammar.

The various divisions of the subject-matter are taken up in the order in which they are given in the grammars, and each division is completed before a new one is introduced. Only a few simple syntactical principles are given in the lessons on etymology. The vocabularies are made up almost entirely from the words most frequently used by Caesar. A few words constantly employed by Cicero in his Orations have been inserted.

It is not intended that each lesson shall occupy one recitation period, but, as the lessons have been equalized as far as possible, the average class should find no difficulty in progressing at the rate of a lesson every two periods. It is suggested that the grammar lesson, and perhaps the vocabulary, be given on one day, and that the next day be devoted to the exercises and review of the grammatical references.

The authors desire to express their obligations to Professor August Rupp for assistance in the preparation of this book, and to their other colleagues for numerous suggestions and criticisms. Especial acknowledgment is due to Professor Charles G. Herbermann for his unfailing encouragement and watchful oversight and advice in the work.

E. B.

H. C. N.

COLLEGE OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK

September, 1906



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTORY. Alphabet, Pronunciation, etc. . . . .	1
 LESSON	
I. First Declension . . . . .	1
II. First Declension, Continued.— Present Indicative Active of First Conjugation . . . . .	2
III. Second Declension: Masculine Nouns . . . . .	3
IV. Second Declension: Neuter Nouns.— Present Indicative of <b>Sum</b> . . . . .	4
V. Adjectives of First and Second Declensions . . . . .	5
VI. Third Declension: Mute Stems . . . . .	6
VII. Third Declension: Liquid and Nasal Stems.— Present Indicative Active of Second Conjugation . . . . .	7
VIII. Third Declension: Vowel Stems . . . . .	8
IX. Adjectives of Third Declension . . . . .	9
X. Fourth Declension.— Present Indicative Active of Third Conjugation . . . . .	10
XI. Fifth Declension.— Adjectives with Genitive in <i>-ius</i> . . . . .	11
XII. Review of Declensions of Nouns and Adjectives . . . . .	12
XIII. Comparison of Adjectives: Regular . . . . .	13
XIV. Comparison of Adjectives: Irregular.— Present Indica- tive Active of Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	14
XV. Adverbs: Formation and Comparison . . . . .	15
XVI. Numerals . . . . .	16
XVII. Prepositions and Conjunctions.— Questions . . . . .	17
XVIII. Pronouns: Personal, Reflexive, Possessive . . . . .	19
XIX. Pronouns: Demonstrative . . . . .	20
XX. Pronouns: Intensive, Relative . . . . .	21
XXI. Pronouns: Interrogative, Indefinite . . . . .	22
XXII. Conjugation of Verb <b>Sum</b> : Indicative . . . . .	23
XXIII. Conjugation of Verb <b>Sum</b> : Complete . . . . .	24
XXIV. First Conjugation: Active, Indicative . . . . .	25
XXV. First Conjugation: Active, Complete . . . . .	26

LESSON	PAGE
XXVI. First Conjugation: Passive, Indicative . . . . .	27
XXVII. First Conjugation: Passive, Complete . . . . .	28
XXVIII. Second Conjugation: Active . . . . .	29
XXIX. Second Conjugation: Passive . . . . .	30
XXX. Third Conjugation: Active, Indicative . . . . .	31
XXXI. Third Conjugation: Active, Complete . . . . .	33
XXXII. Third Conjugation: Passive, Indicative . . . . .	34
XXXIII. Third Conjugation: Passive, Complete . . . . .	35
XXXIV. Fourth Conjugation: Active . . . . .	36
XXXV. Fourth Conjugation: Passive . . . . .	38
XXXVI. Verbs in -iō of Third Conjugation: Active . . . . .	39
XXXVII. Verbs in -iō of Third Conjugation: Passive . . . . .	40
XXXVIII. Deponent Verbs: First and Second Conjugations . . . . .	41
XXXIX. Deponent Verbs: Third and Fourth Conjugations . . . . .	42
XL. Periphrastic Conjugations . . . . .	43
XLI. Irregular Verbs: Possum, Ferō . . . . .	44
XLII. Irregular Verbs: Volō, Nōlō, Mālō . . . . .	45
XLIII. Irregular Verbs: Eō, Fiō . . . . .	46
XLIV. Defective and Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	47
XLV. Syntax of Adjectives and Pronouns. — Reading Selection: Foundation of Rome . . . . .	48
XLVI. Agreement of Nouns. — Syntax of Nominative and Vocative . . . . .	49
XLVII. Syntax of Genitive . . . . .	50
XLVIII. Syntax of Genitive, Continued. — Reading Selection: Sulla and Marius . . . . .	51
XLIX. Syntax of Dative . . . . .	52
L. Syntax of Dative, Continued . . . . .	53
LI. Syntax of Accusative. — Reading Selection: Aeneas . . . . .	54
LII. Syntax of Ablative . . . . .	55
LIII. Syntax of Ablative, Continued . . . . .	56
LIV. Syntax of Ablative, Continued: Ablative Absolute. — Reading Selection: Conspiracy of Catiline . . . . .	57
LV. Constructions of Time and Place . . . . .	58
LVI. Subjunctive in Independent Sentences . . . . .	59
LVII. Sequence of Tenses. — Clauses of Purpose. — Reading Selection: Hannibal . . . . .	60
LVIII. Clauses of Result. — Clauses of Characteristic . . . . .	62



# CONTENTS

vii

LESSON	PAGE
LIX. Substantive Clauses.—Clauses with <i>Quin</i> and <i>Quōminus</i> . . . . .	63
LX. Causal Clauses.—Reading Selection: Pompey subdues the Pirates and Mithridates . . . . .	64
LXI. Concessive Clauses.—Clauses of Proviso . . . . .	65
LXII. Temporal Clauses . . . . .	66
LXIII. Conditional Clauses.—Reading Selection: Caesar's Con- quest of Gaul . . . . .	67
LXIV. Indirect Questions.—The Infinitive . . . . .	68
LXV. Indirect Discourse . . . . .	70
LXVI. Indirect Discourse, Continued.—Reading Selection: Assassination of Caesar . . . . .	71
LXVII. Participles.—Gerundive.—Gerund.—Supine . . . . .	72
Selections from Roman History . . . . .	75
Caesar's Gallic War, Book I, Chapters I–XII . . . . .	85
Notes on Selections from Roman History . . . . .	93
Notes on Caesar's Gallic War, Book I, Chapters I–XII . . . . .	100
Latin-English Vocabulary . . . . .	105
English-Latin Vocabulary . . . . .	131

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative	N.	neuter
abs.	absolute	nom.	nominative
acc.	accusative	obj.	object, objective
act.	active	P., pp.	page, pages
adj.	adjective	part.	participle (in vocab.)
adv.	adverb	part.	partitive
comp.	comparative	pass.	passive
conj.	conjugation	perf.	perfect
dat.	dative	pl.	plural
def., defect.	defective	pluperf.	pluperfect
dep.	depending	pred.	predicate
disc.	discourse	prep.	preposition
ed.	edition	pres.	present
F., fem.	feminine	pron.	pronoun
fut.	future	ref.	reference
gen.	genitive	rel.	relative
i.e.	<i>id est</i> , that is	semi-dep.	semi-deponent
imperf.	imperfect	sing.	singular
impers.	impersonal	spec.	specification
ind.	indirect	subj.	subjunctive
indecl.	indeclinable	subord.	subordinate
indef.	indefinite	sup.	superlative
infin.	infinitive	vocab.	vocabulary
interrog.	interrogative	(1)	first conjugation
intrans.	intransitive	(2)	second conjugation
lit.	literally	(3)	third conjugation
loc.	locative	(4)	fourth conjugation
M., masc.	masculine		

# LATIN LESSONS

## INTRODUCTORY

### ALPHABET, PRONUNCIATION, ETC.

*References are to Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar*

(New ed.) Alphabet, §§ 1, *b*; 2; Syllables, § 7, *a, b*; Pronunciation, § 8; Quantity and Accent, §§ 9; 10; 11, *a, b, c*; 12; Parts of Speech, § 20; Inflection, §§ 21, *a*; 22; 23; 24; Gender, § 29; Number and Case, § 35, *a, b, c, d, e, f*; Declension, §§ 37; 38, *a, b, e*.

(Old ed.) Alphabet, p. 1, *Alphabet*; §§ 1, *a*; 4; 5; Syllables, § 14, *a, c*; Pronunciation, § 16; Quantity and Accent, §§ 18, *d, e*; 19, *a, b*; Parts of Speech, § 25; Inflection, §§ 20, *a*; 26; 27; 21; Gender, § 28; Number and Case, § 31, *a, b, c, d, e, f*; Declension, §§ 32; 33, *a, b, e*.

## LESSON I

### FIRST DECLENSION

(New) §§ 40; 41, *a*; 42; 339; 283; 284.

(Old) §§ 35; 173, 1; 176, *a, b*; 185.

### VOCABULARY

aqua, ae, F., *water*.

Belgae, ārum, M. pl., *Belgians*.

est, *he (she, it, there) is*.

et, *and*.

Gallia, ae, F., *Gaul*.

in, prep. with abl., *in, on*.

nauta, ae, M., *sailor*.

porta, ae, F., *gate*.

rēgīna, ae, F., *queen*.

Rōma, ae, F., *Rome*.

terra, ae, F., *land, country*.

victōria, ae, F., *victory*.

### EXERCISES

1. Portārum. 2. Belgis. 3. Nautam. 4. Victōriā. 5. Aqua et terra. 6. Portās Rōmae. 7. Rēgīna est in Galliā. 8. Victōriae Belgārum. 9. Gallia est terra. 10. Nauta est in aquā.

1. By victories. 2. Of the queens. 3. The gates. 4. To the countries. 5. Rome and Gaul. 6. There is water in Gaul. 7. In the land of the Belgians. 8. Of the sailor's victories.

## LESSON II

### FIRST DECLENSION, *Continued*. — PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF FIRST CONJUGATION

(New) §§ 41 (review); 35 *h*; 43 *c*; 171; 184 (Pres. Indic. Act. of *amō*);  
316; 387.

(Old) §§ 35 (review); 31 *h*; 36 *c*; 122, *a*; p. 92 (Pres. Indic. Act. of *amō*);  
§§ 204; 237.

### VOCABULARY

Athēnae, ārum, F. pl., *Athens*.  
cōpia, ae, F., *plenty*; pl. cōpiae,  
ārum, *forces*.  
dea, ae, F., *goddess*.  
dō, *give*.  
fīlia, ae, F., *daughter*.  
laudō (1), *praise*.

Minerva, ae, F., *Minerva*.  
nōn, *not*.  
nūntiō (1), *report*.  
pecūnia, ae, F., *money*.  
Sulla, ae, M., *Sulla*.  
vocō (1), *call*.

### EXERCISES

1. Portae Athēnārum. 2. Laudāmus. 3. Cōpiam aquae.  
4. Minerva est dea. 5. Filiārum rēgīnae. 6. Victōriās nūntiā-  
tis.<sup>1</sup> 7. Sulla est Athēnīs. 8. Rēgīna fīliam nōn vocat. 9. Cō-  
piās Belgārum laudant. 10. Nauta filiae<sup>2</sup> pecūniam dat.

1. You call. 2. To the forces of Sulla. 3. Of the goddesses.  
4. I do not give money to the sailors. 5. The Belgians praise

<sup>1</sup> The verb usually stands last in Latin.

<sup>2</sup> To his daughter. The possessive pronouns *his*, *her*, etc., are frequently omitted in Latin, and in translating should be supplied if needed.

the country. 6. There is plenty of money at Rome. 7. The queen praises (her)<sup>1</sup> daughters. 8. We report the victory to Sulla.

### LESSON III

#### SECOND DECLENSION: MASCULINE NOUNS

(New) §§ 45; 46 (*servus*); 47; 48; 281; 282.

(Old) §§ 38 (*servus, puer, ager, vir*); 39; 183; 184.

#### VOCABULARY

*ager, agrī, M., field.*

*Labiēnus, ī, M., Labienus, a lieutenant of Caesar.*

*lēgātus, ī, M., ambassador; lieutenant.*

*occupō (1), occupy, seize.*

*populus, ī, M., people.*

*puer, puerī, M., boy.*

*Rōmānī, ōrum, M. pl., Romans.*

*servō (1), guard, protect.*

*silva, ae, F., forest.*

*socius, ī, M., ally.*

*vāstō (1), lay waste.*

*vir, virī, M., man.*

#### EXERCISES

1. Vir puerum vocat. 2. Rōmānī agrōs vāstant. 3. Sociōs Rōmānōrum laudātis. 4. Cōpiaē Sullae portās servant. 5. Sociī silvās Galliae occupant. 6. Populus Labiēnum lēgātum laudat. 7. Lēgātus populō victōriam nūntiat. 8. Labiēnus nōn est in silvīs Belgārum.

1. The men guard the queen. 2. They give money to the boy. 3. The goddess Minerva protects the people. 4. Sulla gives fields to the Romans. 5. The forces of Labienus occupy Gaul. 6. We do not lay waste the forests of the allies. 7. The ambassador of the Belgians is at Rome. 8. The men and the boys praise the sailors.

<sup>1</sup> Words in parentheses are not to be translated.

## LESSON IV

SECOND DECLENSION : NEUTER NOUNS. — PRESENT INDICATIVE OF SUM

(New) §§ 46 (*bellum*); 48; 49 *a, b*; 170 (Pres. Indic. of *sum*); 409.  
(Old) §§ 38 (*bellum*); 39; 40 *a, b*; p. 82 (Pres. Indic. of *sum*); § 248 *c* 1.

## VOCABULARY

*ad*, prep. with acc., *to*.  
*castra, ōrum*, N. pl., *camp*.  
*cōnsilium, ī*, N., *plan*; *advice*.  
*Corinthus, ī*, F., *Corinth*.  
*filius, ī*, M., *son*.  
*frumentum, ī*, N., *grain*.

*gladius, ī*, M., *sword*.  
*necō* (1), *kill*.  
*oppidum, ī*, N., *town*.  
*portō* (1), *carry*.  
*proelium, ī*, N., *battle*.  
*via, ae*, F., *road*.

*Present Indicative of Sum*

*sum, I am*.  
*es, thou art, you are*.  
*est, he (she, it) is*.

*sumus, we are*.  
*estis, you are*.  
*sunt, they are*.

## EXERCISES

1. *Cōpiaē in oppidō sunt*. 2. *Estis sociī*. 3. *Rōmānī viam servant*. 4. *Vir gladiō filium necat*. 5. *Castra sociōrum Corinthī sunt*. 6. *Sulla Rōmānīs proelium nūntiat*. 7. *Frumentum ad castra portāmus*. 8. *Rēgīna filiīs cōnsilium dat*.

1. We seize the roads of Gaul. 2. I am an ambassador of the Romans. 3. The boy carries water to the town. 4. You are not the son of the queen. 5. There is plenty of grain at Athens. 6. The allies kill the men with (their) swords. 7. The Romans guard the camp of Labienus, the lieutenant. 8. The sailors report the plans of Sulla to the allies.

## LESSON V

## ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

(New) §§ 109, 1, 2; 110; 111; 112; 286.

(Old) P. 47, *Inflection*; §§ 81; 82; 186.

## VOCABULARY

bellum, ī, N., *war*.cārus, a, um, *dear*.cum, prep. with abl., *with*.fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring*,  
*near*.ġalli, ōrum, M. pl., *Gauls*.līber, lībera, līberum, *free*.māgnus, a, um, *large, great*.multus, a, um, *much*; pl., *many*.parvus, a, um, *small*.perīculum, ī, N., *danger*.pūgnō (1), *fight*.pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beau-*  
*tiful*.

## EXERCISES

1. Fīlii Rōmānōrum līberī sunt. 2. Silvae Galliae pulchrae sunt. 3. Rōma cāra est Rōmānīs. 4. Perīcula bellī multa et māgna sunt. 5. Gallī cum Rōmānīs pūgnant. 6. Belgae et sociī agrōs finitimōs occupant. 7. Parvus rēgīnae filius in māgnō perīculō est. 8. Oppida Gallōrum finitima sunt agrīs sociōrum.

1. The Gauls are free. 2. There are many roads in Gaul. 3. The queen is dear to the people. 4. We kill many men in war. 5. I report the great battle to Labienus. 6. The forces of Sulla guard the small town. 7. The Romans fight with the neighboring peoples. 8. The towns of the Gauls are large and beautiful.



## LESSON VI

## THIRD DECLENSION : MUTE STEMS

(New) §§ 4; 57; 59.

(Old) §§ 2, *a*; 46.

## VOCABULARY

cūstōs, ōdis, M., *guard*.dux, ducis, M., *leader*.lēx, lēgis, F., *law*.libertās, ātis, F., *liberty*.longus, a, um, *long*.mīles, mīlitis, M., *soldier*.mūrus, ī, M., *wall*.obses, obsidis, M., *hostage*.postulō (I), *demand*.prōvincia, ae, F., *province*.saepe, *often*.virtūs, ūtis, F., *virtue, valor*.

## EXERCISES

1. Miles cūstōdem necat. 2. Belgae Labiēnō obsidēs dant.  
 3. Militēs cum Gallis saepe pūgnant. 4. Nauta multam pecū-  
 niam postulat. 5. Rōmānīs libertātem et lēgēs dat. 6. Socii  
 frūmentum ad prōvinciam portant. 7. Militēs longōs Athēnā-  
 rum mūrōs servant. 8. Māgnam virtūtem ducis populō  
 nūntiās.

1. Liberty is dear to the Gauls. 2. We praise the laws of  
 the Romans. 3. The hostages often demand liberty. 4. The  
 leader of the Gauls kills many men. 5. The lieutenant praises  
 the valor of the guards. 6. The road is long and the dangers  
 (are) many. 7. Labienus with (his) soldiers occupies the walls  
 of the town. 8. We are laying waste the fields of the neighbor-  
 ing provinces.



## LESSON VII

THIRD DECLENSION: LIQUID AND NASAL STEMS.—PRESENT  
INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF SECOND CONJUGATION

(New) §§ 4; 62; 64; 80; 84; 85; 86; 87; 185 (Pres. Indic. Act. of *moneō*).  
 (Old) §§ 2, *b*; 3 *a*; 49; 62; 65, *a, b, c*; p. 96 (Pres. Indic. Act. of *moneō*).

## VOCABULARY

*bonus, a, um, good.*

*Caesar, aris, M., Caesar.*

*Carthāgō, inis, F., Carthage.*

*eques, equitis, M., horseman;*

*pl., cavalry.*

*flūmen, flūminis, N., river.*

*habeō (2), have.*

*legiō, legiōnis, F., legion.*

*parō (1), prepare.*

*tēlum, ī, N., spear, weapon.*

*timor, ōris, M., fear.*

*ubi, where.*

*videō (2), see.*

## EXERCISES

1. Multa flūmina in Galliā sunt. 2. Rōmānī lēgēs bonās habent. 3. Cūstōdēs lēgātum tēlis necant. 4. Māgnās cōpiās equitum parāmus. 5. Ubi ducem militum vidēs? In castrīs videō. 6. Māgnus legiōnum timor populum occupat. 7. Dux sociōrum multōs milītēs Carthāginī habet. 8. Parvae cōpiae Gallōrum cum legiōnibus Caesaris pūgnant.

1. The cavalry have swords and spears. 2. We see many legions at Rome. 3. The Belgians and (their) allies prepare (for) war. 4. Caesar often gives good advice to the soldiers. 5. The rivers of the neighboring province are not long. 6. The soldiers of Caesar see the camp of the Gauls. 7. The province has large forests and beautiful fields. 8. The horseman reports the fear of the legions to Caesar.

## LESSON VIII

## THIRD DECLENSION : VOWEL STEMS

(New) §§ 65, 1, *a, b, 2*; 67; 69; 71, 1, *2, 3*; 72; 74, *a, b, c, d, e*.(Old) §§ 51; 52; 53, *a, b, c*; 54, 1; 55, *a, b, c, d, e*.

## VOCABULARY

auxilium, ī, N., *aid*; pl., *auxiliaries*.caedēs, is, F., *slaughter*.cīvis, is, M., *citizen*.fīnis, is, M., *end*; pl., *territory*.hostis, is, M., *enemy*; pl., *the enemy*.mare, is, N., *sea*.mūnitiō, ōnis, F., *fortification*.oppugnō (1), *assault*.pars, partis, F., *part*.Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman*.timeō (2), *fear*.urbs, urbis, F., *city*.

## EXERCISES

1. Militēs Rōmānī mūnitiōnēs oppugnant. 2. Multī cīvēs auxilium postulant. 3. Nauta māgna maris perīcula nōn timet. 4. Ubi est lēgātus Rōmānus? Est in urbe. 5. Māgna pars cīvium mūrūm urbis servat. 6. In finibus Gallōrum Caesar parva oppida occupat. 7. Dux cīvibus victōriam et caedem hostium nūntiat. 8. Hostēs māgnās cōpiās Rōmānōrum vident et timent.

1. You are Roman citizens, O soldiers. 2. Good men do not often fear the laws. 3. The sailors fight with the enemy on the sea. 4. Caesar's soldiers are in the territories of the allies. 5. In battles the slaughter of the soldiers is often great. 6. A part of the auxiliaries carries weapons and grain to the city. 7. The Roman cavalry lay waste the territory of the Belgians. 8. The legion assaults the city and seizes the enemy's fortifications.

## LESSON IX

## ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION

(New) §§ 114, 1, 2, 3, *a*; 115; 116; 117; 118; 288; 49 *g*.(Old) §§ 84, *a*, *b*; 85, *a*; 188; 40 *f*.

## VOCABULARY

*ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*, *sharp*; *vigorous*;  
*eager*.*altus*, *a*, *um*, *high*; *deep*.*celer*, *celeris*, *celere*, *swift*.*deus*, *ī*, *M.*, *god*.*ferōx*, *ferōcis*, *fierce*, *bold*.*gravis*, *e*, *severe*, *serious*.*immortālis*, *e*, *immortal*.*nāvis*, *is*, *F.*, *ship*.*omnis*, *e*, *all*.*poena*, *ae*, *F.*, *punishment*.*potēns*, *potentis*, *powerful*.*teneō* (2), *hold*.

## EXERCISES

1. Populī Galliae ferōcēs sunt. 2. Dux hostium nāvēs celerēs habet. 3. Omnēs altōs Rōmae mūrōs laudant. 4. Caesar omnibus cōpiis mūnitiōnēs tenet. 5. Ācrēs milītēs Sullae oppidum oppūgnant. 6. Fīnēs occupāmus et omnia vāstāmus. 7. Cīvēs poenās gravēs deōrum immortalīum timent. 8. Equitēs hostium cum potentibus Caesaris legiōnibus pūgnant.

1. Carthage is a powerful city. 2. The ships of the Romans are swift. 3. Virtue is dear to the immortal gods. 4. In the Roman province there are deep rivers. 5. All the auxiliaries hold the camp of the enemy. 6. The punishment of the lieutenant's son is severe. 7. The Gauls fear the sharp swords of Caesar's cavalry. 8. The bold leaders of the Belgians do not give hostages to Caesar.

## LESSON X

FOURTH DECLENSION. — PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF  
THIRD CONJUGATION(New) §§ 88; 89; 90; 91; 93; 186 (Pres. Indic. Act. of *tegō*).(Old) §§ 68; 69, *a, b*; 70 *f*; p. 98 (Pres. Indic. Act. of *tegō*).

## VOCABULARY

commeātus, ūs, M., <i>supplies</i> .	exercitus, ūs, M., <i>army</i> .
cornū, ūs, N., <i>horn; wing</i> (of an army).	fortis, e, <i>brave</i> .
dēfendō (3), <i>defend</i> .	iter, itineris, N., <i>journey, march; road</i> .
domus, ūs, F., <i>house, home</i> ;	manus, ūs, F., <i>hand; band</i> (of men).
loc. domī, <i>at home</i> .	mittō (3), <i>send</i> .
dūcō (3), <i>lead</i> .	portus, ūs, M., <i>harbor</i> .
	senātus, ūs, M., <i>senate</i> .

## EXERCISES

1. Caesar auxilium ad cornua mittit. 2. Nāvēs hostium portum Corinthī occupant. 3. Manū equitum ferōcium castra dēfendimus. 4. Socii commeātum ad exercitum Rōmānum mittunt. 5. In itinere longō multās domōs pulchrās videō. 6. Senātus virtūtem fortium Caesaris legiōnum laudat. 7. Lēgātus omnēs obsidēs ad Sullae castra dūcit. 8. Domī et in omnibus prōvinciīs potēns est Caesar.

1. In the harbor of Carthage there are many ships. 2. The allies hold the wings of the Roman army. 3. The Gauls have plenty of supplies in the camp. 4. The brave soldier defends his leader with his hands. 5. Caesar sends Labienus with a large army to the city. 6. The Romans lead their forces by long marches to the river. 7. You are defending the senate and the homes of the people. 8. Labienus leads a small band of brave men to the town.

## LESSON XI

## FIFTH DECLENSION. — ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -IUS

(New) §§ 95; 96; 97; 98, *a*; 113, *a*; 423, 2.(Old) §§ 72; 73; 74 *d*; 83, *a*; 256, 2.

## VOCABULARY

aciēs, aciēī, F., *line of battle*;*army* (in battle array).alius, a, ud (gen. -īus), *other, another*.diēs, diēī, M. (or F.), *day*.fidēs, fideī, F., *faith, loyalty*.maneō (2), *remain*.mōns, montis, M., *mountain*.paucī, ae, a, pl., *few*.per, prep. with acc., *through*.rēs, reī, F., *thing, matter*.spēs, speī, F., *hope*.tōtus, a, um (gen. -īus), *whole*.vincō (3), *overcome, defeat*.

## EXERCISES

1. Belgae māgnam spem victōriae habent. 2. In omnibus rēbus fidēs est virtūs. 3. Gallī multōs diēs in castrīs manent. 4. Hostēs aliam partem mūrī oppūgnant. 5. Per tōtam urbem cūstōdēs hostium vidēmus. 6. Caesar paucīs equitibus aciem hostium vincit. 7. Cīvēs tōtī exercituī cōnsilia Caesaris nūntiant. 8. Dux per silvam ad altum montem paucōs mittit.

1. The ships remain a few days in the harbors. 2. The enemy defeat the Roman army at Carthage. 3. In the senate the hostages report a serious matter. 4. Labienus, a man of great loyalty, defends the town. 5. Where do the good citizens remain? They remain at home. 6. Other bands of the Gauls lay waste the whole province. 7. A part of the enemy remains the whole day in line of battle. 8. We lead all (our) forces through the province to the mountains of Gaul.

## LESSON XII

## REVIEW OF DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

(New) § 286.

(Old) § 186.

## VOCABULARY

clārus, a, um, *clear, bright;*  
*famous.*collis, is, M., *hill.*crūdēlis, e, *cruel.*dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right.*equus, ī, M., *horse.*fidēlis, e, *faithful.*homō, hominis, M., *man.*lacus, ūs, M., *lake.*ōrātiō, ōnis, F., *speech; ōrātiōnem**habeō, deliver a speech.*recēns, recentis, *recent.*ūtilis, e, *useful.*vulnus, vulneris, N., *wound.**Decline :*alius homō, *another man.*collis altus, *high hill.*cornū dextrum, *right wing.*diēs clārus, *bright day.*equus celer, *swift horse.*exercitus fidēlis, *faithful army.*lacus pulcher, *beautiful lake.*ōrātiō longa, *long speech.*poena crūdēlis, *cruel punishment.*proelium recēns, *recent battle.*rēs ūtilis, *useful thing.*vulnus grave, *severe wound.*

## EXERCISES

1. Miles ācer vulnera gravia habet. 2. Alii domī manent et omnia parant. 3. Puer dextrā manū gladium tenet. 4. Populus poenam ducis crūdēlis postulat. 5. Hominēs et equi duci exercitūs ūtilēs sunt. 6. Hostēs auxilia Rōmānōrum in altō colle vident. 7. Equitēs fortēs et equōs celerēs ad castra mittunt. 8. Labiēnus legiōnibus fidēlibus cornū dextrum dēfendit.

1. The man's wound is not severe. 2. The days are bright and the sea is beautiful. 3. Caesar has great hope in the loyalty of the allies. 4. There are a few ships of the enemy on the

deep lakes. 5. The famous leader delivers a long speech in the senate. 6. We send supplies and other useful things to the army. 7. In war the Roman soldiers are faithful to their leaders. 8. The lieutenant reports to Caesar the recent battle and the cruel slaughter of the enemy.

## LESSON XIII

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: REGULAR

(New) §§ 123; 124; 125; 126; 128; 120, *a*; 291, *b*.

(Old) §§ 89, *a, b, d*; 86, *b*; 93, *b*.

### VOCABULARY

*aequus, a, um, level; favorable.*

*brevis, e, short.*

*expectō (1), await.*

*facilis, e, easy.*

*idōneus, a, um, suitable.*

*impetus, ūs, M., attack.*

*lātus, a, um, broad, wide.*

*locus, ī, M., place; pl. loca, ōrum, N.*

*miser, misera, miserum, wretched.*

*nōbilis, e, noble.*

*pōnō (3), place; castra pōnō, pitch a camp.*

*quam, than.*

Learn the comparison of adjectives used in preceding vocabularies (except *bonus, māgnus, multus, parvus*).

### EXERCISES

1. Galli finēs lātiōrēs quam Belgae habent. 2. Miserrimus sum, cīvēs, et poenam expectō. 3. Caesar in locō māximē idōneō castra pōnit. 4. Per prōvinciam Rōmānam itinera faci-liōra sunt. 5. Rōmānī in aequiōre locō impetum hostium expectant. 6. In Caesaris castris filii virōrum nōbilissimōrum obsidēs sunt. 7. Breviōre itinere parvam partem cōpiārum ad lacum mittit. 8. Mūnitiōnēs castrōrum Caesaris altiōrēs sunt quam mūrī urbis.



1. The fields of the allies are broad and level. 2. Caesar places the bravest legion on the right wing. 3. There is a very short and very easy road through the hills. 4. In a recent speech Caesar praises the valor of his soldiers. 5. Labienus is more powerful than the leader of the enemy's auxiliaries. 6. The Roman army overcomes the noblest and fiercest peoples of Gaul. 7. You are defending Carthage with ships swifter than (the ships) of the enemy. 8. We occupy more suitable places and await for many days the attack of the Belgians.

## LESSON XIV

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: IRREGULAR. — PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF FOURTH CONJUGATION

(New) §§ 129; 130, *a, b*; 187 (Pres. Indic. Act. of *audiō*).

(Old) §§ 90; 91, *a, b*; p. 104 (Pres. Indic. Act. of *audiō*).

### VOCABULARY

*annus*, ī, M., *year*.

*citerior*, ius, *hither*.

*contendō* (3), *hasten; contend*.

*imperātor*, ōris, M., *commander*.

*malus*, a, um, *bad, wicked*.

*multitūdō*, dinis, F., *multitude*.

*mūniō* (4), *fortify*.

*propior*, ius, *nearer*.

*superior*, ius, *higher; sup.*

*summus*, a, um, *highest, greatest*.

*ulterior*, ius, *farther*.

*vāllum*, ī, N., *rampart*.

*veniō* (4), *come*.

### EXERCISES

1. Hostēs altissimō vāllō locum mūniunt. 2. Ad portās urbis brevī viā venimus. 3. Oppidum sociōrum prōvinciae Rōmānae proximum est. 4. Imperātor ad superiōrem partem montis equitēs dūcit. 5. Filiī civium optimōrum saepe sunt pessimī. 6. Gallī cum Rōmānīs multōs annōs contendunt. 7. Legiōnēs Caesaris māiōrem exercitum Belgārum nōn timent. 8. Senātus Caesarem cum māximā multitūdine militum ad Galliam ulteriōrem mittit.



1. You are nearer to the larger camp of the Gauls. 2. The enemy's plans are worse than Caesar's. 3. A few wicked (men) remain many years at Athens. 4. I come, commander, with a most faithful band of auxiliaries. 5. The Romans send soldiers to the farthest parts of the province. 6. In hither Gaul there are very many men of the greatest valor. 7. A multitude of Roman citizens hastens to the rampart. 8. Labienus fortifies the smaller camp and defends the nearest territories.

## LESSON XV

## ADVERBS: FORMATION AND COMPARISON

(New) §§ 214, *a, b*; 218; 12 *a*; 324 *a*.

(Old) §§ 148, *a, b*; 92; 19 *c*; 156 *a*.

## VOCABULARY

*ā, ab*,<sup>1</sup> prep. with abl., *from*.

*ācritēr*, *vigorously, fiercely*.

*celeriter*, *quickly*.

*cotīdiē*, *daily*.

*diligenter*, *diligently, carefully*.

*diū*, *for a long time*; comp. *diūtius*, sup. *diūtissimē*.

*Helvētius*, *a, um, Helvetian*; pl.

*Helvētīi, ōrum, M., Helvetians*.

*longē*, *far, by far*.

*petō* (3), *seek*.

*prohibeō* (2), *keep off; prevent*.

*-que*, enclitic<sup>2</sup> conj., *and*.

*undique*, *from all sides, on all sides*.

## EXERCISES

1. *Helvētīi ab omnibus proximīs populis auxilium petunt*. 2. *Labiēnus impetum equitum diū ācritēr prohibet*. 3. *Militēs nautaeque ad urbem undique veniunt*. 4. *Agrōs Helvētiōs multitudīne hominū celerrimē vāstāmus*. 5. *Fortissimī omnem spem libertātis in proeliō pōnunt*. 6. *Sulla nāvibus celerrimīs*

<sup>1</sup> Before a vowel or *h*, *ab* must be used; before a consonant, either *ā* or *ab* may be used.

<sup>2</sup> An enclitic is a word *attached* to the preceding word. The enclitic *-que* is always to be translated *before* the word to which it is attached.

portum diligenter servat. 7. Nōn longē ab oppidō māximō castra pōnit. 8. Imperātor frūmentum commeātumque ad sociōs cotīdiē mittit.

1. Other legions assault the rampart on all sides. 2. We hasten to the river with all our cavalry and allies. 3. The auxiliaries are fighting more fiercely than the Roman legions. 4. The enemy give by far the noblest of the citizens (as) hostages. 5. Caesar comes quickly with a smaller army to the nearest hill. 6. The Belgians send ambassadors and seek peace from the Roman people. 7. The leader with a part of his army for a very long time keeps the legion from the supplies. 8. The soldiers most diligently defend their commander from the weapons of the Helvetians.

## LESSON XVI

### NUMERALS

(New) §§ 132, I, 1, 2, 3; 133; 134, *b, c, d, e*; 113 (*ūnus*); 423, 1; 425.  
(Old) §§ 94, *b, c, d, e, f*; 83 (*ūnus*); 256, 1; 257.

### VOCABULARY

arma, ōrum, N. pl., <i>arms</i> .	passus, ūs, M., <i>pace</i> ; mīlle passūs,
decimus, a, um, <i>tenth</i> .	<i>mile</i> ; pl. mīlia passuum.
gerō (3), <i>carry; perform</i> ;	prior, prius, <i>former</i> ; sup. prīmus, a,
bellum gerō, <i>wage war</i> .	um, <i>first</i> .
impediō (4), <i>hinder</i> .	sed, <i>but</i> .
nox, noctis, F., <i>night</i> .	trāns, prep. with acc., <i>across</i> .
numerus, ī, M., <i>number</i> .	

### EXERCISES

1. Nāvēs legiōnem decimam trāns mare portant. 2. Nocte per lātissimās silvās cōpiās dūcit. 3. Arma equōsque ad militēs tōtius exercitūs mittimus. 4. Decimō diē Caesar mūrōs oppidi

ācritēr oppūgnat. 5. Senātus māgnū numerū cīvīū ad arma vocat. 6. Imperātor duo mīlia passuū ā colle castra pōnit. 7. Labiēnus, prīmus Caesaris lēgātōrum, iter Helvētiōrum impedit. 8. Rōmānī cum Gallis tōtū annū bellū gerunt, sed nōn vīcunt.

1. A brave commander often performs great things. 2. On the first night we guard the camp more carefully. 3. The bold leader gives to his allies many swords and spears. 4. The first line (of battle) remains in arms for a long time. 5. Labienus hastens quickly across the river with the tenth legion. 6. The fear of a few soldiers hinders the army from many things. 7. The Roman soldiers often assault the city most fiercely. 8. He places a small number of auxiliaries one hundred paces from the larger band.

## LESSON XVII

### PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS. — QUESTIONS

(New) §§ 220, *a, b, c*; 223; 331; 332, *b*; 333; 336.

(Old) §§ 152, *a, b, c*; 154; 210, *a, c, e*; 212.

### VOCABULARY

aut, <i>or</i> ; aut . . . aut, <i>either</i> . . . <i>or</i> .	neque (nec), <i>and not, nor</i> ; neque (nec) . . . neque (nec), <i>neither</i> . . . <i>nor</i> .
ē, ex, <sup>1</sup> prep. with abl., <i>out of</i> , <i>from</i> .	num, interrogative particle.
et . . . et, <i>both</i> . . . <i>and</i> .	prō, prep. with abl., <i>for, in behalf of</i> ; <i>before</i> .
fuga, ae, F., <i>flight</i> .	propter, prep. with acc., <i>on account of</i> .
in, prep. with abl., <i>in, on</i> ; with acc., <i>into</i> .	quod, <i>because</i> .
-ne, enclitic interrogative particle.	turpis, e, <i>disgraceful</i> .

<sup>1</sup> Before a vowel or *h*, *ex* *must* be used; before a consonant, either *ē* or *ex* may be used.

## EXERCISES

1. Socii frumentum ex agris in oppidum cotidie portant. 2. Romam defenditis et pro domibus pugnat. 3. Alios<sup>1</sup> ad cornu dextrum, alios<sup>1</sup> trans flumen mittō. 4. Exercitus Caesaris neque agros vastat neque oppida oppugnat. 5. Propter gravia imperatoris vulnera cum Belgis non contendimus. 6. Num est fuga Gallorum turpior quam legionum? Non est. 7. Labienus est et clarissimus et potentissimus omnium legatorum. 8. Nonne senatus populusque Romanus auxilium ab aliis petit?

1. Are all men either good or bad? 2. Caesar delivers a short speech in behalf of the hostages. 3. On the march the swiftest horses are very useful to the army. 4. He hastens into farther Gaul with two legions and many auxiliaries. 5. The Roman camp is in a suitable place before the town of the enemy. 6. The forces come out of the territories of the Helvetians and do not occupy the towns. 7. On account of the disgraceful flight of the cavalry the Romans defeat the enemy. 8. The leader remains in the nearest territories because the roads are very level.

<sup>1</sup> alii . . . alii, *some . . . others.*

## LESSON XVIII

## PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, REFLEXIVE, POSSESSIVE

(New) §§ 140; 142; 143, *f*; 295, *a*; 144, *a, b*; 145.(Old) §§ 98, 1, *a, 2, a, b, 3*; 99 *e*; 194, *a*.

## VOCABULARY

amīcus, *a, um, friendly*; amīcus,ī, *M., friend*.ego, meī, *I*; pl. nōs, *we*.Germānia, *ae, F., Germany*.hiemō (1), *pass the winter*.inter, prep. with acc., *between, among*.meus, *a, um, my*.noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*.sē, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*.suus, *a, um, his, her, its, their (own)*.tū, tuī, *thou, you*; pl. vōs, *you*.tuus, *a, um, thy, your*.vester, vestra, vestrum, *your*.

## EXERCISES

1. Helvētiī mē ad senātum Rōmānum mittunt. 2. Clārissima nōbīs sunt omnia tua cōnsilia. 3. Vōs omnēs vōbīs primum locum itineris petitis. 4. Gallī cōpiaēque vestrae obsidēs inter sē dant. 5. Nōs tibi amīcī sumus quod tū nōbīscum nōn pūgnās. 6. Ego ā meis sociīs, vōs ā vestris auxilium postulātis. 7. Nōs prō libertāte nostrā cum Belgīs saepe contendimus. 8. Rōmānī in oppidīs suis hiemant neque in Germāniā manent.

1. All my soldiers are faithful to me. 2. They place all hope for themselves in flight. 3. Do you give money neither to us nor to your friends? 4. You demand fields for yourselves and your sons. 5. Is the tenth legion passing the winter in our province? 6. We keep off the forces of the enemy from our camp. 7. The Roman army is fighting fiercely between the lake and the hills of Germany. 8. The former of the two leaders defends himself from the attack of his own soldiers.

## LESSON XIX

## PRONOUNS : DEMONSTRATIVE

(New) §§ 146; 145, note; 296, 1, 2.

(Old) §§ 100; 101; 98 3, note; 195.

## VOCABULARY

adventus, ūs, M., <i>approach,</i> <i>arrival.</i>	impedimentum, ī, N., <i>hindrance ;</i> <i>pl., baggage.</i>
cognōscō (3), <i>learn, find out.</i>	is, ea, id, <i>that ; he, she, it ; pl., they.</i>
explōrātor, ōris, M., <i>scout.</i>	iuvō (1), <i>aid.</i>
hīc, haec, hōc, <i>this.</i>	nūntius, ī, M., <i>messenger.</i>
īdem, eadem, idem, <i>the same.</i>	repentīnus, a, um, <i>sudden, unex-</i> <i>pected.</i>
ille, illa, illud, <i>that ; he, she, it ;</i> <i>pl., they.</i>	semper, <i>always.</i>

## EXERCISES

1. Caesar per explōrātōrēs adventum hostium cognōscit. 2. Nōs frūmentō aliisque rēbus eōs semper iuvāmus. 3. Repentīna perīcula hūius itineris plūrima sunt. 4. Ex lēgātō rem cognōscunt et ea loca mūniunt. 5. Vidēsne illōs collēs inter nostra castra et mare? Videō. 6. Ūna legiō commeātum impedimentaue exercitūs servat. 7. Prīmō adventū nūnti senātus hās legiōnēs in Galliam mittit. 8. Propter caedem māgnae partis cōpiārum dux in eōdem oppidō manet.

1. The allies aid him with ships and auxiliaries. 2. The Roman army has many horses and much baggage. 3. The messenger quickly reports all these (things) to the senate. 4. Our (men) pass the winter in the most beautiful part of Gaul. 5. The sudden arrival of those legions prevents the attack of the Belgians. 6. On that night the scouts report to us the enemy's plans. 7. Caesar leads the same soldiers four miles across the river. 8. The Helvetians are (men) of great valor because they are always waging war with others.



## LESSON XX

## PRONOUNS : INTENSIVE, RELATIVE

(New) §§ 146 (*ipse*); 298 *c, d, i*; 147; 150 *d*; 305.(Old) §§ 101 (*ipse*); 195 *f, g*; 103; 104 *e*; 198.

## VOCABULARY

*equitātus, ūs, M., cavalry.**facile, easily.**Germānī, ōrum, M. pl., Germans.**inīquus, a, um, unfavorable.**iniūria, ae, F., injury, wrong.**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self.**pater, patris, M., father.**praesidium, ī, N., protection; guard.**quī, quae, quod, who, which, that.**relinquō (3), leave.**tertius, a, um, third.**vīs, vis, F., force, violence; pl.**vīrēs, vīrium, strength (New, § 79;**Old, § 61).*

## EXERCISES

1. Is quem vidēs meus pater est.
2. Omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnunt.
3. Equitātus ex inīquō locō ad collem contendit.
4. Socii vim hostium ab oppidīs nōn facile prohibent.
5. Caesar milītēs quōs sēcum habet in proelium dūcit.
6. Helvētīi tertiam partem cōpiārum trāns flūmen relinquunt.
7. Propter repentinam fugam auxiliōrum Germānī facile vinct.
8. Caesar ipse omnem Galliam ab iniūriis Germānōrum dēfendit.

1. The allies await the arrival of the tenth legion itself.
2. The Roman people praise the father of gods and men.
3. The commander leads his army into a most unfavorable place.
4. The Romans very easily keep from injury those who come to them.
5. We leave a large part of the cavalry in the camp which is in Gaul.
6. On the third night I come to the legion whose leader is Labienus.
7. Caesar sends guards into the provinces that are friendly to the Germans.
8. The Romans overcome by force the cruel Germans with whom they are fighting.

## LESSON XXI

## PRONOUNS: INTERROGATIVE, INDEFINITE

(New) §§ 148, *b*; 151, *c, e, g*; 309.(Old) §§ 104, *a*; 105, *c, d, e*; 202.

## VOCABULARY

aliquis, aliquid, *some one, some-thing*; adj. aliquī, aliqua, ali-quod, *some*.

cīvitās, ātis, F., *state*.

cohors, cohortis, F., *cohort*.

incolumis, e, *unharmed, safe*.

inveniō (4), *find*.

praeda, ae, F., *booty, plunder*.

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), *a certain*.

quis, quid, *who? what?* adj. quī,

quae, quod, *which? what?*

quisque, quidque, adj. quisque,

quaeque, quodque, *each, every*.

sine, prep. with abl., *without*.

## EXERCISES

1. Eōdem diē quōsdam in finēs Germānōrum mittimus. 2. Aliquae cīvitātēs Caesarī quam Gallis amiciōrēs sunt. 3. Labiēnus legiōnem incolumem in eam terram dūcit. 4. Nōn sine māgnā spē victōriae domum relinquitis. 5. Veniō ad vōs prō quōdam virō cūius poena est gravissima. 6. Quis est dux cohortium quās in Galliā citeriōre relinquis? 7. Militēs multam praedam in finibus cūiusque cīvitātis inveniunt. 8. Num est dux Gallōrum fortior aut fidēlior quam hīc explōrātor?

1. Which town of the enemy is nearest to this city? 2. The leader of the cohort finds all his (men) safe in camp. 3. They send to him (as) ambassadors the noblest of their state. 4. Caesar praises the loyalty and valor of each of his soldiers. 5. He leaves all the plunder in this town without a guard. 6. There is a certain town in the farthest parts of our province. 7. Some messengers come from the right wing and report the danger to Caesar. 8. We assault the city, nor does the approach of the enemy hinder our (men) from the attack.



# LESSON XXII

## CONJUGATION OF VERB *SUM* : INDICATIVE

(New) §§ 154, *a, b, c, d, e*; 170 (Indicative).

(Old) §§ 108, *a, b, c, d*; pp. 82, 83 (Indicative).

## VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be  
away.*

aedificium, ī, N., *building.*

Ariovistus, ī, M., *Ariovistus.*

cōspectus, ūs, M., *sight.*

exterior, ius, *outer*; sup. extrēmus,  
*a, um, farthest, extreme.*

ferē, *almost, about.*

incendō (3), *burn.*

Ītalia, ae, F., *Italy.*

litterae, ārum, F. pl., *letter.*

nunc, *now.*

postrīdiē, *on the next day.*

regiō, ōnis, F., *region.*

## EXERCISES

1. Tōtius Galliae partēs erant trēs. 2. Hās rēs ex litterīs Sullae cognōscō. 3. Nunc Helvētiī omnia sua aedificia incendunt. 4. Ipse ab castrīs hostium mille passūs aberat. 5. Cōnsilia Labiēni ūtilia Caesarī saepissimē fuerant. 6. Postrīdiē Ariovistus exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs urbis oppūgnat. 7. Cohortēs ācrius pūgnant quod in Caesaris cōspectū sunt. 8. Imperātor explorātōrēs in extrēmās regiōnēs Ītaliae ferē cotīdiē mittit.

1. The scouts have been in the farthest territories of Germany. 2. We now send messengers and letters to the senate from Gaul. 3. This place was two miles away from the Roman forces. 4. We shall be at home with our friends for a few days. 5. There has always been plenty of supplies in the camp. 6. We burn almost all the ships which are in the harbor of Athens. 7. On the next day the army of Ariovistus comes in<sup>1</sup> sight of our cavalry. 8. The Germans burn the buildings and lay waste the fields of the whole region.

<sup>1</sup> Use in with acc.

## LESSON XXIII

CONJUGATION OF VERB **SUM**: COMPLETE

(New) § 170.

(Old) Pp. 82, 83.

## VOCABULARY

adsum, adesse, adfuī, <i>be present.</i>	iūstus, a, um, <i>just.</i>
concilium, ī, N., <i>council.</i>	liberī, ōrum, M. pl., <i>children.</i>
dēbeō (2), <i>ought.</i>	magistrātus, ūs, M., <i>magistrate.</i>
discēdō (3), <i>depart.</i>	pōns, pontis, M., <i>bridge.</i>
hīberna, ōrum, N. pl., <i>winter quarters.</i>	prīnceps, cipis, M., <i>chief, leading man.</i>
hōra, ae, F., <i>hour.</i>	ut, <i>that, in order that.</i>

## EXERCISES

1. Omnēs quī adsunt ā Caesare auxilium petunt. 2. Hostēs liberōs principum cīvitatū necant. 3. Bonī cīvēs magistrātibus semper fidēlēs esse dēbent. 4. Ego ipse aderam ut poena virōrum iūsta esset. 5. Semper in hostium cōspectū milītēs nostrī erant. 6. Trēs legiōnēs, quae in Galliā hiemant, ex hībernīs discēdunt. 7. Tertiā ferē hōrā ēiusdem diēi ad longum pontem venīmus. 8. Dux venit ad finem ōrātiōnis quam in conciliō milītum habet.

1. All magistrates ought to be very just. 2. Soldiers, be brave, and the victory will be yours. 3. Labienus now places a guard on the nearest bridge. 4. Ariovistus departs from this place with all the cavalry. 5. Caesar hastens in order that he may be present in the camp. 6. That place would have been suitable for the winter quarters of the army. 7. The ambassador comes to the council with many leading men of the state. 8. The Germans fight many hours in behalf of themselves and their children.

## LESSON XXIV

## FIRST CONJUGATION: ACTIVE, INDICATIVE

(New) §§ 164, 1, 2, 3, *a, b, c*; 165, 1, 2; 171; 172; 184 (Active Indicative).

(Old) §§ 117, 1, 2; 121, *a, b, c*; 122, *a, b*; pp. 92, 93 (Active Indicative).

## VOCABULARY

accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, <i>blame, accuse.</i>	expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, <i>take</i>
amīcitia, ae, F., <i>friendship.</i>	<i>by storm, capture.</i>
animus, ī, M., <i>mind; courage.</i>	graviter, <i>severely.</i>
armō, āre, āvī, ātum, <i>arm.</i>	ibi, <i>there.</i>
collocō, āre, āvī, ātum, <i>station.</i>	pāx, pācis, F., <i>peace.</i>
cōfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum, <i>strengthen,</i>	sīgnum, ī, N., <i>signal; standard.</i>
<i>establish.</i>	

## EXERCISES

1. Oppida Belgārum per vim expūgnāvimus. 2. Omnibus quī in aciē sunt sīgnum dat. 3. Alii sē armābant, alii nostrās nāvēs exspectābant. 4. Caesar eōs graviter accūsāt quod Rōmānōs nōn iuvant. 5. Adventus nūntiōrum nostrōs spē auxiliī cōfirmāverat. 6. Ab iis quōs Labiēnus prō oppidō collocāvit pācem petimus. 7. Ibi necāvērunt māgnūm numerum eōrum quī oppidum expūgnāverant. 8. Quod timor animōs prīncipum occupāvit, civitās in amicitīā Rōmānōrum manet.

1. The Helvetians were carrying the grain through our province. 2. Our soldiers had always guarded the standards most carefully. 3. The Germans will establish peace and friendship with the Gauls. 4. The Roman commander armed with swords the soldiers of each cohort. 5. You have strengthened our courage by your speech. 6. The enemy very easily captured the cities which they were assaulting. 7. There Caesar stations the cavalry and auxiliaries. 8. I blamed the legion severely because it had not occupied the town.

## LESSON XXV

## FIRST CONJUGATION : ACTIVE, COMPLETE

(New) §§ 184 (Active); 155, *a, b, c*; 117, *b*.(Old) Pp. 92, 93 (Active); § 109, *a, b, c*.

## VOCABULARY

Aeduus, *a, um, Aeduan*; pl. Aeduī,ōrum, *M., Aeduans*.explōrō, *āre, āvī, ātum, explore*.gēns, *gentis, F., tribe*.imperō, *āre, āvī, ātum, command*.nāvigō, *āre, āvī, ātum, sail*.ōra, *ae, F., coast*.ōrō, *āre, āvī, ātum, beg, entreat*.praeter, *prep. with acc., except*.rēgnō, *āre, āvī, ātum, reign*.statim, *immediately*.tribūnus, *ī, M., tribune*.vexō, *āre, āvī, ātum, harass, ravage*.

## EXERCISES

1. Prīncipes ōrāvērunt ut Caesar cīvitatē servāret. 2. Haec pulchra rēgīna decem annōs rēgnāverit. 3. Sociī finēs omnium eārum gentium explōrāvissent. 4. Caesar imperāvit ut castra Aeduōrum oppūgnārent. 5. Tribūnum militēs propter virtutē laudantem inveniō. 6. Omnia oppida hūius regiōnis praeter ūnum expūgnāverāmus. 7. Helvētīī pācem cum proximīs gentibus statim cōfirmāre dēbent. 8. Ad ultimās ōrās Germāniae nāvigābimus ut regiōnēs vexēmus.

1. You, my friends, ought not to blame your leaders. 2. All the tribes except the Aeduans were preparing (for) war. 3. We would have entreated Caesar in behalf of our citizens. 4. He himself had reigned for a very long time in the Aeduan state. 5. Report immediately those (things) which I have commanded. 6. He sails into the harbor in order that he may explore the country. 7. To ravage the coasts of Gaul without very many ships would not have been easy. 8. The tribunes quickly armed the soldiers, in order that they might take the enemy's camp by storm.

## LESSON XXVI

## FIRST CONJUGATION: PASSIVE, INDICATIVE

(New) §§ 184 (Passive Indicative); 179 *g*; 405; 283; 284.(Old) Pp 94, 95 (Passive Indicative); §§ 126 *g*; 246; 176, *a, b*; 185.

## VOCABULARY

*ā*, *ab*, prep. with abl., *by*.Allobrogēs, *um*, M. pl., *Allobroges*.angustus, *a, um*, *narrow*.creō, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *elect*.difficilis, *e*, *difficult*.fortiter, *bravely*.nōndum, *not yet*.nūllus, *a, um* (gen. -*ius*), *no, none*.pācō, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *pacify, subdue*.superō, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *defeat*.vulnerō, *āre, āvī, ātum*, *wound*.*Learn also*dō, *dare, dedī, datum, give* (New, § 202).

## EXERCISES

1. Hī virī ā populō magistrātūs creābuntur. 2. Ibi nāvēs commeātusque ab exercitū expectābantur. 3. Tribūnus fortissimē et ācerrimē pūgnāns necātus est. 4. Nūllum aliud iter erat angustius aut difficilius. 5. Oppida Allobrogum ā Rōmānīs nōndum expūgnāta sunt. 6. Aeduōs sine auxiliō superāre difficillimum fuisset. 7. Cīvitātēs quae ā Caesare pācātae erant obsidēs statim dedērunt. 8. Castra hostium nōn oppūgnābimus quod māgnus numerus nostrōrum vulnerātus est.

1. We often demanded money, but none was given to us. 2. I had not yet been elected leader of that tribe. 3. Corinth will be bravely guarded by almost all the soldiers. 4. By a narrow and difficult road the scout comes into the camp. 5. The lieutenant's son, fighting with the enemy, was severely wounded. 6. By far the largest tribe of the Germans has been subdued by our (men). 7. This was the farthest town of the Allobroges and the nearest to the Helvetians. 8. They were defeated by the forces which had been stationed in the town.

## LESSON XXVII

## FIRST CONJUGATION: PASSIVE, COMPLETE

(New) § 184 (Passive).

(Old) Pp. 94, 95 (Passive).

## VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, M., *access, way of approach.*agmen, minis, N., *army (on the march), column.*convocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call together.*perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *disturb, throw into confusion.*prīvātus, a, um, *private.*pūblicus, a, um, *public; rēs pūblica, gen. reī pūblīcae, F., commonwealth, state.*rēx, rēgis, M., *king.*Rhēnus, ī, M., *Rhine.*vīcus, ī, M., *village.*vītō, āre, āvī, ātum, *avoid.**Learn also*iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *aid.*

## EXERCISES

1. Haec māxima perīcula fugā vītārī dēbent. 2. Dux imperāvit ut omnēs tribūnī convocārentur. 3. Omnēs cohortēs ab hostibus perturbātae essent. 4. Omnia eōrum aedificia pūblica prīvātaque occupāta erant. 5. Imperātor superātus trāns flūmen Rhēnum suōs dūcit. 6. Caesar ad Aeduōs nūntium mittit ut sociī convocentur. 7. Cōpiae Ariovistī, rēgis Germanōrum, iter agminis nostrī impediunt. 8. Proximōs collēs occupāmus ut aditus ad vicum difficilis sit.

1. These things ought now to be reported by us to the Romans. 2. The cavalry have no way of approach to the camp. 3. We remain in the village in order that aid may be awaited. 4. On account of the recent slaughter the minds of all were



disturbed. 5. In this commonwealth we have often been aided by the immortal gods. 6. The king, having been aided by many private (men), hastens to the Rhine. 7. You lead the first column into those places where the fields have been laid waste. 8. A council of the soldiers was called together in order that this danger might be avoided.

## LESSON XXVIII

## SECOND CONJUGATION: ACTIVE

(New) § 185 (Active).

(Old) Pp. 96, 97 (Active).

## VOCABULARY

cōsul, ulis, M., *consul*.

dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight*.

Gallicus, a, um, *Gallic*.

iam, *already*.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order*.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move*.

obsideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessum,  
*besiege, blockade*.

pertineō, tinēre, tinuī, *extend*.

respondeō, spondēre, spondī,

spōnsum, *reply*.

studeō, studēre, studuī, *desire*.

*Learn also*

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, *have*.

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain*.

timeō, timēre, timuī, *fear*.

## EXERCISES

1. Cōsul nāvēs in portū manēre iussit. 2. Hostēs ab eō locō inīquō castra iam mōverant. 3. Helvētīi lātissimōs finēs habēre semper studēbant. 4. Imperātor equitēs Gallicōs fortiter dīmicantēs invenit. 5. Lēgātus iubet tribūnōs cōfirmāre animōs eōrum quī timent. 6. Agrī nostrī ā colle ad proximum oppidum pertinent. 7. Lēgātī cōsulī Rōmānō respondērunt

et auxilium postulāverunt. 8. Omnēs nostrōs convocābimus ut hōc oppidum obsideāmus.

1. That narrow road extends many miles. 2. Has Caesar replied to this speech of Ariovistus? 3. Not without great danger shall I remain in this house. 4. He had ordered the guard to move the standard from that place. 5. You armed all the allies in order that you might besiege the city. 6. The two armies will fight before the walls in sight of the consul. 7. The forces of the enemy were blockading all the roads through the province. 8. The Germans desired to fight with the Aeduians and other Gallic tribes.

## LESSON XXIX

### SECOND CONJUGATION: PASSIVE

(New) § 185 (Passive).

(Old) Pp. 96, 97 (Passive).

### VOCABULARY

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *increase*.

contineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum, *keep, restrain*.

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *destroy*.

fāma, ae, F., *report*.

imperium, ī, N., *command; power*.

novus, a, um, *new*; novissimum agmen, *the rear*.

pedes, peditis, M., *foot-soldier*; pl., *infantry*.

permoveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *alarm, disturb*.

perterreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, *terrify*.

subitō, *suddenly*.

sustineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum, *sustain*.

### *Learn also*

prohibeō, hibēre, hibuī, hibitum, *keep off, prevent*.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, hold.

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*.



## EXERCISES

1. Numerus peditum hostium cotidiē augētur. 2. Urbs Carthāgō ā Rōmānīs iam dēlēta erat. 3. Paucōs diēs ā Caesare in castrīs continēbāmur. 4. Hīs rēbus permōti, nūntiōs ad eum mittunt. 5. Tribūnus imperāvit ut castra statim movērentur. 6. In Germāniā summum imperium ā rēge Ariovistō tenēbātur. 7. Caesar impetum hostium ā novissimō agmine sustinēri iussit. 8. Fāmā adventūs Gallōrum cohortēs subitō perterritae sunt.

1. You ought not to be disturbed by that report. 2. The battle was bravely sustained by the same cohorts. 3. The power of Caesar is feared by very many Gallic states. 4. For a long time the cavalry will be restrained from battle. 5. The soldiers, terrified, did not await the commands of Labienus. 6. We were suddenly alarmed by those things which we saw. 7. The new legion, which Caesar ordered to keep off the enemy, has been destroyed. 8. In order that the fear of the enemy may be increased, I call together the whole army.

## LESSON XXX

THIRD CONJUGATION : ACTIVE, INDICATIVE

(New) § 186 (Active Indicative).

(Old) Pp. 98, 99 (Active Indicative).

## VOCABULARY

captīvus, ī, M., *captive*.

comparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare;*  
*procure*.

cōnsīdō, sīdere, sēdī, sessum,  
*encamp*.

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum,  
*surrender*.

ēdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead out*. inde, *thence*.

mōs, mōris, M., *custom*.

postquam, *after*.

premō, premere, pressī, pressum,  
*press hard; overwhelm*.

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum,  
*write*.

scūtum, ī, N., *shield*.

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover;*  
*protect*.

*Learn also*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead*.

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send*.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place*.

**EXERCISES**

1. Inde peditēs auxiliaque in hīberna dūximus. 2. Ariovistus sex mīlia passuum ab Rhēnō cōnsēderat. 3. Omnēs mōrēs Germānōrum ex captivīs cognōscis. 4. Eī quōs Rōmānī preserant sē scūtīs tēxērunt. 5. Belgae imperātōrī sē suaque omnia statim dēdent. 6. Hostēs frūmentum novāsque nāvēs Carthāginī comparābunt. 7. Nūntius mihi litterās dedit quās amīcus meus scripserat. 8. Postquam Caesar hostēs vīdit, suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēdūxit.

1. Your son has written this letter with his own hand. 2. Each tribe had its own customs and laws. 3. The Belgians have pitched their camp four miles from the coast. 4. The citizens were protecting by arms their liberty and their homes. 5. After these things were prepared, he sent the captives into the city. 6. In other parts of the camp we find many shields and weapons. 7. The tribes which Sulla had overwhelmed surrendered their towns. 8. Thence the Romans will lead out the army and encamp in the enemy's territory.

## LESSON XXXI

## THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE, COMPLETE

(New) § 186 (Active).

(Old) Pp. 98, 99 (Active).

## VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, <i>do; discuss.</i>	compleō, plēre, plēvī, plētum, <i>fill.</i>
alter, altera, alterum (gen. -īus), <i>the other; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.</i>	cōstituō, stituere, stituī, stitū- tum, <i>place; determine.</i>
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, <i>close.</i>	dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, <i>say.</i>
committō, mittere, mīsī, missum, <i>commit; proelium committō, join battle.</i>	facinus, facinoris, N., <i>crime.</i>
	metus, ūs, M., <i>fear.</i>
	pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, <i>drive; rout.</i>
	praemium, ī, N., <i>reward.</i>

*Learn also*

contendō, tendere, tendī, tentum, *hasten; contend.*  
 discēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *depart.*  
 petō, petere, petīvī (iī), petītum, *seek.*

## EXERCISES

1. Labiēnus Aeduōs ex mūnitiōnibus pellere cōstituit.  
 2. Facinora quae hī virī commiserant turpia erant. 3. Tri-  
 būnus militum alterum cōsulem gladiō vulnerāvit. 4. Cīvēs,  
 portās claudite et ad vestrās domōs discēdite. 5. Legiōnēs  
 cum Helvētiis proelium committere iussae sunt. 6. Caesar  
 militibus dixit, “Māgna praemia virtūtis petēmus.” 7. Propter  
 metum militēs nōn ēgērunt ea quae dux iusserat. 8. Imperāvit  
 ut omnia superiōra loca multitūdine militum complērentur.

1. What have you ordered the messenger to say to the con-  
 sul? 2. This is the worst crime that his son has committed.

3. The whole place was filled with swords and spears. 4. To the one he gave money, to the other greater rewards. 5. Soldiers, join battle immediately in order that we may rout the enemy. 6. The ambassadors would have discussed the same things with Caesar. 7. The Romans, terrified by fear of the enemy, will close all the gates. 8. Caesar was hastening to the village in order that he might place a guard there.

## LESSON XXXII

### THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE, INDICATIVE

(New) § 186 (Passive Indicative).

(Old) Pp. 98, 99 (Passive Indicative).

### VOCABULARY

āmittō, mittere, mīsi, missum, <i>lose.</i>	instruō, struere, strūxī, strūc-
angustiae, ārum, F. pl., <i>narrow</i>	tum, <i>draw up.</i>
<i>pass.</i>	palūs, ūdis, F., <i>swamp.</i>
barbarus, ī, M., <i>barbarian.</i>	procul, <i>far off, at a distance.</i>
coniungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūctum, <i>join.</i>	prope, prep. with acc., <i>near.</i>
dēserō, serere, serui, sertum, <i>desert.</i>	Sēquanī, ōrum, M. pl., <i>Sequa-</i>
	nians.

### Learn also

cognōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nitum, *learn, find out.*  
 gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, *perform; wage.*  
 relinquō, linquere, liqui, lictum, *leave.*

### EXERCISES

1. Hae cohortēs cum Caesaris exercitū coniungentur. 2. Omnia auxilia in novissimō agmine relictā sunt. 3. Ibi plūrimī cīvēs omnem pecūniam amīsērunt. 4. Parva palūs erat inter nostrum et hostium exercitum. 5. Aciēs barbarōrum in angustīs procul ā castrīs instruēbātur. 6. Miserī hominēs ā suis amicīs saepissimē

dēseruntur. 7. Castra ā Sēquanīs in colle prope oppidum posita erant. 8. Bellum ā Rōmānīs cum barbarīs multōs annōs gestum est.

1. Ariovistus is said to have routed a Roman legion. 2. Have the Roman cohorts been deserted by all the allies? 3. The approach of the Sequanians was seen by us at a distance. 4. We have been drawn up before the camp near a large swamp. 5. A few faithful friends were discussing these things with me. 6. The hope of victory was increased because our two armies were joined. 7. In this narrow pass many men and horses had already been lost. 8. The customs of the barbarians will be learned by the scouts whom we have sent.

## LESSON XXXIII

## THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE, COMPLETE

(New) § 186 (Passive).

(Old) Pp. 98, 99 (Passive).

## VOCABULARY

agger, aggeris, M., <i>mound</i> .	ferrum, ī, N., <i>sword</i> .
caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum, <i>kill</i> .	incitō, āre, āvī, ātum, <i>urge on</i> ;
Cicerō, ōnis, M., <i>Cicero</i> .	<i>incite</i> .
cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctum, <i>surround</i> .	interim, <i>meanwhile</i> .
cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōāctum, <i>bring together</i> ; <i>compel</i> .	moenia, moenium, N. pl., <i>walls</i>
dēdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, <i>withdraw</i> .	(of a city).
	patria, ae, F., (native) <i>country</i> .
	pūgna, ae, F., <i>fight, battle</i> .

*Learn also*

dēfendō, fendere, fendī, fēnsum, *defend*.

incendō, cendere, cendī, cēnsum, *burn*.

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *overcome, defeat*.

## EXERCISES

1. Rōmānī ab hīs barbarīs nōn pressī essent. 2. Haec castra aggere altō undique cingēbantur. 3. Eōs ferrō caedī et vīcōs eōrum incendi iubet. 4. Eō diē māgnus numerus hominum caesus esse dīcitur. 5. Germānī victī exercitum ex hīs regiōnibus dēdūxērunt. 6. Caesar multis rēbus ad illam pūgnam incitābātur. 7. Interim moenia oppidī ā sociīs fortiter dēfēnsa erant. 8. Tribūnus ōrāvit ut Cicerō ex suā patriā discēdere cōgerētur.

1. This tribune, who was friendly to Cicero, was killed. 2. The Gauls urged on their horses and quickly joined battle with us. 3. The mound was higher than the fortifications of our camp. 4. I was not kept from the fight by fear of your sword. 5. The city was very easily defended by the enemy's cavalry. 6. Meanwhile he ordered the guards to be withdrawn from the walls. 7. The Belgians, fighting very bravely in behalf of their country, were overcome. 8. They send messengers through the province in order that auxiliaries may be brought together.

## LESSON XXXIV

## FOURTH CONJUGATION: ACTIVE

(New) §§ 187 (Active); 181 *b*.

(Old) Pp. 104, 105 (Active); § 128 *a* 2.

## VOCABULARY

classis, is, F., *fleet*.

comperiō, perīre, perī, pertum,  
*find out*.

conveniō, venīre, vērī, ventum,  
*come together*.

Crassus, ī, M., *Crassus*.

dē, prep. with abl., *from*; *con-*  
*cerning*.

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *show*.

dēsiliō, silīre, siluī, sultum, *leap down*.

ēgregius, a, um, *remarkable*.

īnsidiae, ārum, F. pl., *ambush*; *plot*.

perveniō, venīre, vērī, ventum, *come*,  
*arrive*.

servus, ī, M., *slave*.

tumultus, ūs, M., *tumult, uproar*.

*Learn also*

impediō, pedīre, pedīvī (iī), pedītum, *hinder*.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come*.

## EXERCISES

1. Paucōs diēs exspectant ut cōpiae convenient. 2. Aliquī servī proximam viam mihi dēmōnstrābunt. 3. Cum classe centum nāvium ad haec loca veniēbāmus. 4. Crassus multās rēs dē hostibus comperisse dīcitur. 5. Rōmānī ad castra Ariovistī sine tumultū pervēnissent. 6. Equitēs adventum barbarōrum per īnsidiās impedīverant. 7. Caesar imperāvit ut nautae dē nāvibus in mare dēsilīrent. 8. Propter nostram ēgregiam fidem nōs dare obsidēs nōn coēgit.

1. We arrived by the road which had been shown to us. 2. You will find out from this man the plans of the consuls. 3. Leap down from your horses, soldiers, and come into the camp. 4. On account of the great tumult he easily routed the Sequanians. 5. Concerning this cruel plot many things were said in the council. 6. After he ordered the fleet to come together, he determined to blockade the town. 7. I shall call together the slaves in order that I may find out this from them. 8. The legions were faithful to Crassus because he was a man of remarkable valor.



## LESSON XXXV

## FOURTH CONJUGATION: PASSIVE

(New) § 187 (Passive).

(Old) Pp. 104, 105 (Passive).

## VOCABULARY

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, <i>hear.</i>	lēgātīō, ōnis, F., <i>embassy.</i>
condō, dere, didī, ditum, <i>found.</i>	mors, mortis, F., <i>death.</i>
corpus, corporis, N., <i>body.</i>	reperiō, reperīre, repperī, reper- tum, <i>discover.</i>
etiam, <i>also; even.</i>	Rōmulus, ī, M., <i>Romulus.</i>
finiō, finīre, finīvī, finītum, <i>end.</i>	sōlus, a, um (gen. -īus), <i>alone,</i> <i>only.</i>
fossa, aē, F., <i>ditch.</i>	

*Learn also*inveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *find.*mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī (īi), mūnītum, *fortify.*

## EXERCISES

1. Urbs Rōma ā Rōmulō condita est. 2. Metus eōrum morte sōlā finiētur. 3. Prīnceps lēgātīōnis obsidēs incolumēs invēnit. 4. Socii servābant corpora eōrum quī caesi erant. 5. In prīmō agmine Caesar duās legiōnēs dūcēbat. 6. Minōra etiam castra vāllō fossāque mūniēbantur. 7. In senātum convenimus ut ōrātiōnem Cicerōnis audiāmus. 8. Litterae ab eīs scriptae in castris repertae sunt.

1. Suddenly an uproar was heard in the enemy's camp. 2. There towns will be founded by Caesar's soldiers. 3. The bodies of these men were found in the ditch. 4. Even to this place a way of approach had been discovered. 5. Romulus commanded that Rome should be fortified with a wall. 6. The embassy sent by the senate reported the death of the consul. 7. The battle would have been ended by the arrival of Caesar alone. 8. Many ships ought now to be procured, in order that the enemy may be overwhelmed.



## LESSON XXXVI

### VERBS IN -IŌ OF THIRD CONJUGATION: ACTIVE

(New) § 188 (Active).

(Old) P. 100 (Active).

#### VOCABULARY

calamitās, ātis, F., *disaster*.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take*.

Catilīna, ae, M., *Catiline*.

certus, a, um, *certain*.

coniūrātiō, ōnis, F., *conspiracy*.

cōnspiciō, spicere, spexī, spectrum,  
*see*.

contrā, prep. with acc., *against*.

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum,  
*desire*.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *make*,  
*do*; certiōrem faciō, *inform*.

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee*.

nōmen, nōminis, N., *name*.

recipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum, *re-*  
*cover*; *receive*; with reflex-  
ive sē, *retreat*.

#### EXERCISES

1. Peditēs in silvās sē recēpisse dīcuntur. 2. Certam partem mīlitum in oppidum dūcī iubēbis. 3. Cīvēs sē armāre et urbem recipere cupiēbant. 4. Catilīna coniūrātiōnem contrā rem pūblicam fēcērat. 5. Belgae sīgna legiōnum Rōmānārum procul cōnsplexērunt. 6. Germānī trāns Rhēnum fugientēs ab hostibus pressī sunt. 7. Is locus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī nōmen capiet. 8. Contendimus ut eum dē hāc coniūrātiōne certiōrem facerēmus.

1. Without my aid you would not have taken the town. 2. Catiline's conspiracy was discovered by Cicero. 3. They now desire to do that which has been commanded. 4. The public buildings which we saw there were very beautiful. 5. In all lands the name of this commander will be famous. 6. The barbarians, terrified, had fled through the forest to the coast. 7. He will receive certain powerful men who will come to him. 8. On account of this disaster he did not draw up the line of battle against the enemy.

## LESSON XXXVII

## VERBS IN -IŌ OF THIRD CONJUGATION: PASSIVE

(New) § 188 (Passive).

(Old) P. 100 (Passive).

## VOCABULARY

cōnficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, *accomplish, finish.*cōnscrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *enroll.*dēditīō, ōnis, F., *surrender.*dīripīō, ripere, ripuī, reptum, *plunder.*frāter, frātris, M., *brother.*iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw.*interficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, *kill.*pīlum, ī, N., *javelin.*reliquus, a, um, *remaining; pl.*reliquī, ōrum, M., *the rest.*subsidiū, ī, N., *reinforcement; assistance.*

## EXERCISES

1. Duo m̄xima bella ā Caesare iam cōnfecta erant. 2. Belgae ōrābant ut in dēditionem reciperentur. 3. Cūstōdēs dē cōnsiliis Germānōrum eōs certiōrēs facient. 4. Frāter principis Aeduōrum ab hostibus interfectus est. 5. Reliquōs captīvōs interficī et impedimenta dīripī iussit. 6. Subsidia exspectāmus ut ā locō hostēs pellāmus. 7. Interim cum legiōnibus quae cōnscriptae erant in Galliam contendit. 8. Peditēs, quōs in insidiis collocāverat, pila subitō iēcērunt.

1. Captives are often killed by certain tribes. 2. Two new legions will be enrolled in hither Gaul. 3. Catiline commanded that all Italy should be plundered. 4. Assistance was sent to me immediately by my brother. 5. After a few were wounded, the rest fled across the river. 6. The Helvetians sent ambassadors to him concerning their surrender. 7. Javelins and spears were being thrown from the walls by the infantry. 8. In order that these things may be accomplished, he orders certain men to come together.

## LESSON XXXVIII

## DEPONENT VERBS : FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

(New) §§ 190 (mīror, vereor), *a, c* ; 192.(Old) §§ 135 (mīror, vereor), *a, c* ; 136.

## VOCABULARY

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, <i>dare</i> .	nocturnus, <i>a, um, night, at night</i> .
centuriō, ōnis, <i>M., centurion</i> .	polliceor, licērī, licitus sum, <i>promise</i> .
cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, <i>encourage</i> .	rīpa, <i>ae, F., bank</i> .
cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, <i>try</i> .	salūs, ūtis, <i>F., safety</i> .
moror, ārī, ātus sum, <i>delay</i> .	sōlum, <i>only</i> ; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, <i>not only . . . but also</i> .
mōtus, ūs, <i>M., revolt</i> .	

## EXERCISES

1. Crassus captīvīs salūtem iam pollicitus erat. 2. Centuriōnēs ā signīs discēdere nōn audēbunt. 3. Catilīna servōs ad mōtum incitāre cōnābātur. 4. Dux cohortātus milītēs moenia oppūgnāvit. 5. Inde nocturnō itinere ad rīpās Rhēnī pervēnimus. 6. Allobrogēs ōrābant ut paucōs diēs in suīs finibus morārētur. 7. Nostrī nōn sōlum agrōs vāstant, sed etiam oppida dīripiunt. 8. Hae gentēs cum cōpiīs potentiōribus Caesaris contendere ausae sunt.

1. By this speech the tribune encourages his men. 2. You did not dare to say this to the consul. 3. Not only citizens, but also slaves were enrolled by us. 4. The Romans are trying to defend the camp from a night attack. 5. The revolt of the Aeduans was reported to him by a centurion. 6. Some tried to defend the camp, others sought safety by flight. 7. Labienus promised assistance to those who were hard pressed. 8. Caesar, having delayed a few hours, led his army to the bank of the river.

## LESSON XXXIX

## DEPONENT VERBS: THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

(New) § 190, *a, c.*(Old) § 135, *a, c.*

## VOCABULARY

adorior, orīrī, ortus sum, <i>attack.</i>	fortūna, ae, F., <i>fortune.</i>
commoveō, movēre, mōvī, mō-	noctū, <i>by night.</i>
tum, <i>alarm.</i>	Ōceanus, ī, M., <i>ocean.</i>
ēgredior, gredī, gressus sum, <i>go</i>	patior, patī, passus sum, <i>suffer;</i>
<i>forth.</i>	<i>allow.</i>
experior, perīrī, pertus sum, <i>test,</i>	post, prep. with acc., <i>after.</i>
<i>try.</i>	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, <i>follow.</i>

## EXERCISES

1. Bellum quod gessērunt celerrimē cōfectum est. 2. Legiōnēs ex castris noctū ēgredientēs vīdimus. 3. Num Catilinam bellum contrā patriam gerere patiēmur? 4. Imperium Rōmānum ab Ōceanō ad ultimās terrās pertinuit. 5. Domōs suās reliquērunt ut fortūnam bellī experirentur. 6. Post ēius mortem id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnātī sunt. 7. Helvētīi, hīs rēbus commōtī, nūntiōs ad eum dē pāce mīsērunt. 8. Hī, novissimum agmen adortī, multa mīlia passuum sequēbantur.

1. The leader will test the loyalty and valor of the legions. 2. Caesar encouraged all the tribunes of the soldiers. 3. You have lost your fortunes and have suffered many injuries. 4. They follow us by night and fiercely attack our camp. 5. Caesar allowed them neither to surrender themselves nor to flee. 6. After their flight the army was ordered to go forth from the town. 7. He will encamp near the ocean in order that his soldiers may guard the coast. 8. Because we are alarmed by these letters, we shall withdraw our men from the place.

## LESSON XL

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

(New) §§ 194, *a, b, c*; 195; 196; 374, *a*.

(Old) §§ 129; 232, note.

## VOCABULARY

arx, arcis, F., <i>citadel</i> .	lātē, <i>widely</i> ; longē lātēque, <i>far</i>
comes, comitis, M., <i>companion</i> .	and <i>wide</i> .
commūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mū-	māne, <i>early in the morning</i> .
nītum, <i>fortify</i> .	pateō, patēre, patuī, <i>be open; be clear</i> .
fīrmus, a, um, <i>strong</i> .	proficīscor, ficīscī, fectus sum, <i>set out</i> .
Hispānia, ae, F., <i>Spain</i> .	templum, ī, N., <i>temple</i> .

## EXERCISES

1. Adventus ducis vōbīs omnibus exspectandus est. 2. Fīrmum praesidium in arce relictūrī sumus. 3. Audēsne, Catilīna, in hōc templum venīre? 4. Postridiē māne castra nostra commūnienda erant. 5. Portae diū clausae erant, sed nunc patent. 6. Cōpiae Catilīnae Ītaliā longē lātēque vāstātūrae erant. 7. Quidam in senātū semper dicēbat, "Carthāgō dēlenda est." 8. Cum paucīs comitibus amīcisque ad Hispāniā proficīscī cupiō.

1. Caesar was about to burn the villages far and wide. 2. All these things ought to be avoided by brave men. 3. This tribe was the strongest and most powerful of all Spain. 4. The temples of the immortal gods must be defended by the citizens. 5. His plans were clear both to the senate and to the whole Roman people. 6. The infantry were about to set out early in the morning without baggage. 7. On account of his father's death my companion will remain at home. 8. In order that we may keep off the enemy, the citadel must be fortified.

## LESSON XLI

## IRREGULAR VERBS: POSSUM, FERŌ

(New) §§ 198, *b*; 200, *a*.(Old) §§ 137, *b*; 139.

## VOCABULARY

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, <i>bring</i> .	ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, <i>bear, bring</i> .
circiter, adv. and prep. with acc., <i>about</i> .	labor, ōris, <i>M., labor</i> .
cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum, <i>bring together</i> .	merīdiēs, diēi, <i>M., noon</i> .
dēligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctum, <i>choose</i> .	perferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, <i>convey; endure</i> .
discessus, ūs, <i>M., departure</i> .	possum, posse, potuī, <i>am able, can</i> .
	secundus, a, um, <i>second</i> .

## EXERCISES

1. Postrīdiē litterae ab Ariovistō allātae sunt.
2. Circiter merīdiem ex castrīs profectus est.
3. In proximum oppidum sua omnia cōnferent.
4. Mille hominēs ex omnibus cōpiīs dēligendī erant.
5. Fāma dē Caesaris discessū per castra perfertur.
6. Secunda aciēs sōla impetum hostium sustinēre potuisset.
7. Helvētiī secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt.
8. Militēs miserī labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn poterant.

1. The fear of war brings disaster to the commonwealth.
2. That man is able to endure very severe labors.
3. I sent a letter to you concerning my hope of safety.
4. The Aeduians will not be able to bring together the grain.
5. At noon the Germans suddenly made an attack from all sides.
6. The departure of the ships was hindered by the violence of the sea.
7. The centurions of this cohort were chosen by the soldiers themselves.
8. He encamps about a mile from the allies in order that his soldiers may bring aid to them.



## LESSON XLII

## IRREGULAR VERBS : VŌLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

(New) § 199.

(Old) § 138.

## VOCABULARY

aperiō, perīre, perui, pertum, *open.*apertus, a, um, *open, exposed.*cōsistō, sistere, stitī, *halt, take  
a position.*cūr, *why?*latus, lateris, N., *side, flank;* ab  
latere, *on the flank.*māgnitūdō, dinis, F., *greatness,  
size.*mālō, mälle, māluī, *prefer.*mora, ae, F., *delay.*nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling.*sub, prep. with acc., *under;*  
with abl., *under, at the foot of*

(New, § 220 c; Old, § 152 c).

vinculum, ī, N., *chain.*volō, velle, voluī, *wish, be willing.*

## EXERCISES

1. Caesar hostēs sine morā adorīrī vult. 2. Rōmae multōs amīcōs in vīculis vidit. 3. Milītēs locum ubi cōstitērant relinquere nōlēbant. 4. Cūr manēre quam hās īnsidiās vitāre mālūistī? 5. Portās urbis aperient et imperiō Caesaris sē dēdent. 6. In apertō locō prope flūmen paucae cohortēs vidēbantur. 7. Māgnitūdō corporum Germānōrum Rōmānīs timōrem attulit. 8. Iī quī sub monte cōsistunt ab apertō latere impetum facient.

1. The letter ought to be opened without delay. 2. Crassus fortified one side of the camp with a ditch. 3. Shall we, the consuls, prefer to endure all these injuries? 4. After he came to these open places, he determined to halt. 5. Why are you unwilling to be under the power of the Roman people? 6. The captives, who are now in chains, are able to bear even this. 7. About two thousand of the soldiers are said to be willing to follow him. 8. On account of the greatness of the danger many states are compelled to seek your aid.

## LESSON XLIII

## IRREGULAR VERBS: EŌ, FĪŌ

(New) §§ 203, *b*; 204, *a*, *b*.(Old) §§ 141, *b*; 142, *a*, *b*.

## VOCABULARY

Alpēs, Alpium, F. pl., <i>Alps</i> .	patefaciō, facere, fēcī, factum (pass.
eō, ire, iī (īvī), itum, <i>go</i> .	patefīō), <i>open; disclose</i> .
exeō, ire, iī, itum, <i>go out</i> .	queror, querī, questus sum, <i>complain</i> .
exsilium, ī, N., <i>exile</i> .	redeō, ire, iī, itum, <i>return</i> .
fīō, fierī, factus sum (pass. of	Rhodanus, ī, M., <i>Rhone</i> .
faciō), <i>be made, be done; become; certior fīō, be in-</i>	trānseō, ire, iī, itum, <i>cross</i> .
<i>formed</i> .	tum, <i>then</i> .

## EXERCISES

1. Sēquanī sōlī querī nōn ausī sunt. 2. Cōnsul Catilinam in exsilium ire iusserat. 3. Tū nōn fēcistī ea quae fierī dēbuērunt. 4. Helvētīi omnia comparant ut ex finibus exeant. 5. Facinora eōrum hominum omnibus nōbīs patefiēbant. 6. Tum agmen Caesaris flūmen Rhodanum trānsiit. 7. Per explōrātōrēs Rōmānī dē hōc mōtū certiōrēs fient. 8. Equitēs trāns Alpēs redeuntēs ā barbaris interfectī sunt.

1. The lieutenant had gone into Gaul with the infantry. 2. Then we commanded that the gates should be opened. 3. Labienus will return to the Rhone with the cavalry. 4. Your brother became the leading man<sup>1</sup> of the Aeduans. 5. Caesar, having set out from winter quarters, was crossing the Alps. 6. Through very powerful friends Cicero was able to return from exile. 7. The ambassador complained concerning the injuries and crimes of the Germans. 8. Catiline is said to have gone out on the next day to the camp of the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> Use nominative case.



## LESSON XLIV

## DEFECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS

(New) §§ 205; 206 *b*; 207; 208, *b, c, d*.(Old) §§ 143, *a, b, c*; 144 *b*; 145; 146, *b, c, d*.

## VOCABULARY

coepī, coepisse, *began*.crēber, bra, brum, *frequent,*  
*numerous.*famēs, is, F., *hunger.*ineō, ire, iī, itum, *enter*; cōn-  
silium ineō, *form a plan.*inopia, ae, F., *want.*inquam, *say.*licet, licēre, licuit, *it is permitted;*  
*(one) may.*oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *it is neces-*  
*sary, it is proper; (one) ought.*pāgus, ī, M., *district, canton.*praedor, ārī, ātus sum (intrans.),  
*plunder.*tempestās, ātis, F., *storm.*

## EXERCISES

1. Nautae vim tempestātis ferre nōn potuērunt. 2. Novās legiōnēs in Galliā ulteriōre cōscribere oportēbat. 3. Principēs ex hīs agris suōs dēducere coepērunt. 4. Crēbra cōsilia contrā Rōmānōs ab hostibus inita sunt. 5. Tum ōrābant ut sibi liceret ad domōs suās redire. 6. Famē et inopiā omnium rērum morārī cōgēbantur. 7. Plūrimī hominēs eiūs pāgī nōbiscum sē coniūnxērunt. 8. “Ēgredimini,” inquit, “et praedāminī per omnēs partēs prōvinciae.”

1. The auxiliaries had already begun to plunder far and wide. 2. He was said to be able to endure hunger and want. 3. It is not only permitted, but it is also proper to say this. 4. The great storms which followed kept our men in camp. 5. “The enemy,” says the messenger, “are now entering the city.” 6. Caesar replied to the numerous embassies that had been sent. 7. The Sequanians were able to move their camp to a more suitable place. 8. All except this one canton were willing to send ambassadors.

## LESSON XLV

## SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

(New) §§ 285, 1, 2; 286; 288; 293; 295, *a*; 302, *c*; 145, note; 305; 308 *a*.  
 (Old) §§ 186, *a, b*; 188; 193; 194, *a*; 197, *c*; 98, 3, note; 198; 201 *a*.

## VOCABULARY

cēterī, *ae, a, the other; the rest.*

commūnis, *e, common, general.*

eō, *thither, to that place.*

medius, *a, um, middle, middle of.*

nihil, *N., indecl., nothing; as adv., not at all.*

orbis, *is, M., circle; orbis terrarum, the world.*

regō, *regere, rēxī, rēctum, rule.*

ūllus, *a, um (gen. -īus), any.*

## EXERCISES

1. Vestra cīvitas ā principibus regēbātur. 2. Cēterī virī clārissimī adesse nōlēbant. 3. Mediā ferē nocte legiōnem eō proficisci iussit. 4. Nihil pēius aut turpius est quam hōc facinus. 5. Legiōnēs sē celeriter coniūnxērunt et eōs adortae sunt. 6. Fāma eius calamitātis per orbem terrarum perlāta est. 7. Germānī nec ūllōs obsidēs mittent nec pācem petent. 8. Tū contrā commūnem patriam omnium nostrum coniūratiōnem fēcistī.

1. The Roman people then ruled the world. 2. I am not at all disturbed by his recent speech. 3. The same things that you saw were seen by the rest. 4. You are ruling the tribes which I myself defeated. 5. In the general council each state promised many soldiers. 6. This war has been finished without any great slaughter. 7. He placed the reinforcements between the middle line (of battle) and the wings. 8. Caesar, after he saw the Gauls on the top of [summus] the hill, hastened thither.

## FOUNDATION OF ROME

Rōmulus et Remus erant filiī Mārtis deī et Rhēae Silviae, virginis Vestālis. Amūlius, rēx Albānōrum, mātrem in vincula coniēcit, puerōs autem in Tiberim abicī iussit. Faustus pāstor eōs invēnit et uxōrī dedit. Sic Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Postea urbem condidērunt, quam Rōmulus dē suō nōmine Rōmam vocāvit.

## LESSON XLVI

## AGREEMENT OF NOUNS. — SYNTAX OF NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE

(New) §§ 281; 282; 283; 284; 339; 340.

(Old) §§ 183; 184; 185, *a*; 173, *i*; 241.

## VOCABULARY

Britannia, *ae*, *F.*, *Britain*.

dominus, *i*, *M.*, *master*.

ferus, *a*, *um*, *wild*, *savage*.

forum, *i*, *N.*, *the forum*.

ingēns, ingentis, *huge*, *great*.

mercātor, ōris, *M.*, *trader*.

moriōr, morī, mortuus sum, *die*.

numquam, *never*.

## EXERCISES

1. Multī mercātōrēs ā ferīs gentibus caesī sunt. 2. Servī spē ingentis praedae ad vim incitābantur. 3. Postquam mortuus est, eius filius rēx factus est. 4. Caesar ex Galliā in Britanniam nāvigāvisse dīcitur. 5. Ego cōsul tē, Catilīna, haec cōficere numquam patiar. 6. Multa templa aliaque pūblica aedificia in forō Rōmānō erant. 7. Haec reperta sunt ā mercātōribus quī ad eās regiōnēs ierant. 8. Imperāvit ut alii dominōs interficerent, alii domōs incenderent.

1. The traders desired to learn the customs of Britain. 2. These cruel and savage men were compelled to flee. 3. The soldier found his companion dying in a narrow pass. 4. Cicero was called by the citizens the father of his country. 5. The

captives were led through the forum to a certain temple. 6. We, the bravest of Caesar's soldiers, will never desert our commander. 7. Rewards ought to be given to a slave that is faithful to his master. 8. Does the huge size of the bodies of the Germans terrify you, soldiers?

## LESSON XLVII

### SYNTAX OF GENITIVE

(New) §§ 341; 342; 343, *b*; 345, *b*; 417; 346, *a*, 1, 2, 3, 4, *c*; 347; 348.

(Old) §§ 213; 214, *a* 1, *c*; 215, *b*; 252 *a*; 216, *a*, 1, 2, 3, 4, *c*; 217.

### VOCABULARY

ante, adv. and prep. with acc., *before*.

audācia, ae, F., *boldness*.

coniciō, icere, iēcī, iectum, *throw, hurl*.

nēmō, (nēminis), M., *no one*.

odium, ī, N., *hatred*.

Pompēius, ī, M., *Pompey*.

sapiēns, sapientis, *wise*.

satis, adv., *enough*.

### EXERCISES

1. Metus mortis nōn est sapientis. 2. Hī agrī nunc plūris sunt quam ante fuērunt. 3. Nēmō cēterōrum haec mēcum agere ausus est. 4. Crassus in hībernīs satis praesidī relinquere cōstituit. 5. Propter populi odium mercātōrēs ex Galliā discēdebant. 6. Pompēius quōsdam hominēs summae audāciae eō miserat. 7. Ad extrēmās ōrās Galliae iter quīdecim diērum fēcimus. 8. Sociī Rōmānōrum Gallōs secūtī tēla coniēcērunt.

1. That beautiful house is my brother's. 2. Was he not the wisest of the Roman magistrates? 3. Caesar's speech filled the soldiers with hatred of Pompey. 4. The reinforcements had already come before his departure. 5. The enemy's fortifications were not vigorously enough defended. 6. Meanwhile he allowed no one of them to hurl any weapon. 7. You ought to defend yourselves from the boldness of these men. 8. The consul, a man of great valor, had a fleet of a hundred ships.

## LESSON XLVIII

SYNTAX OF GENITIVE, *Continued*(New) §§ 349, *a*; 350; 352; 354, *b*.(Old) §§ 218, *a*; 219; 220; 221, *b*.

## VOCABULARY

condemnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *condemn, convict.*cupidus, *a, um, desirous, eager.*glōria, *ae, F., glory.*māiōrēs, māiōrum, *M. pl., ancestors.*meminī, meminisse, *defect., remember.*oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *forget.*paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, *impers., it repents; mē paenitet, I repent.*perītus, *a, um, skilled.*

## EXERCISES

1. Nōne glōriae populī Rōmānī meministis? 2. Eōs paenitēbit cōnsiliōrum quae iniērunt. 3. Recentium iniūriarum Helvētiōrum oblīvīscī nōn potuit. 4. Cum tribus milibus armātōrum hominum ex castrīs exiit. 5. Cupidī sumus nūllius eārum rērum quās pollicitus es. 6. Lēgātus hōs virōs cōscribere māvult quod perītī bellī sunt. 7. Homō quī ēiūs facinoris condemnātus est in vincula coniciētur. 8. Māiōrēs eōrum haec facinora numquam commīsissent.

1. We shall never forget the slaughter of our children. 2. The glory of our ancestors was greater than ours. 3. Wise men ought not to be eager for money. 4. This wicked man has not yet repented of his crime. 5. "We are waging war," says he, "for the general safety of all." 6. Two centurions of Caesar's army were condemned by the senate. 7. Pompey is said to have been most skilled in war and arms. 8. They remembered the road which we had shown to them before.

## SULLA AND MARIUS

Postquam Sulla contrā Mithridātem, rēgem Pontī, profectus est, Marius et Cinna ingressi urbem Rōmam nōbilissimōs ex senātū interfēcērunt. Reliqui ex urbe fugientēs ad Sullam vērunt et orāvērunt ut patriam iuvāret. Ille in Ītaliā trāsiit, hostium exercitūs vicit, etiam urbem ingressus est. Quattuor mīlia hominum, quī sē dēdiderant, interficī iussit; duo mīlia equitum et senātorum prōscripsit.

## LESSON XLIX

## SYNTAX OF DATIVE

(New) §§ 361; 362; 366, note 1; 367; 368, 1; 370; 372.

(Old) §§ 224; 225; 226, note 1; 227, e, 1; 228; 230.

## VOCABULARY

cōfidō, fidere, fīsus sum, semi-dep., <i>trust, have confidence in.</i>	parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsum, <i>spare.</i>
īferō, īferre, intulī, illātum, <i>bring</i> <i>upon, inflict; bellum īferō,</i> <i>make war on.</i>	placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, <i>please.</i>
itaque, <i>therefore.</i>	praeficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, <i>place in command of.</i>
Nerviī, ōrum, m. pl., <i>Nerviī.</i>	resistō, sistere, stitī, <i>resist.</i>

## EXERCISES

1. Eī lēgatiōnī Pompēius nihil respondit. 2. Nerviī orābant ut ā Caesare sibi parcerētur. 3. Ante mediam noctem nōbīs cōsistere nōn licuit. 4. Gallī equitibus magis quam peditibus cōfidēbant. 5. Māiōrī partī eōrum placet fortūnam bellī experiri. 6. Itaque Caesar reliquīs legiōnibus lēgātōs praeficiet. 7. Huic repentināe coniūratiōnī resistere nōn possumus. 8. Dux Germānōrum multās iniūriās gentibus Gallicis intulerat.

1. Our ancestors had promised liberty to the slaves.
2. The legions then began to resist the Nervii more bravely.
3. A new name will be given to this place by Caesar.
4. The Helvetians often made war on the neighboring states.
5. Therefore in this matter we shall spare neither labor nor danger.
6. Caesar always trusted the tenth legion on account of its valor.
7. The severe punishment of Catiline and his companions pleased the people.
8. He placed me in command of the ships which he had brought together.

## LESSON L

SYNTAX OF DATIVE, *Continued*

(New) §§ 373, *b*; 374, *a*; 375 *b*; 376; 381, *a*; 382, 1, 2; 384.

(Old) §§ 229, *a*; 231, *a*; 232, note, *c*; 233, *a, b*; 234, *a*; 235.

## VOCABULARY

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus,  
*be wanting.*

ēripiō, ripere, ripuī, reptum, *take*  
*away, rescue.*

impendeō, pendēre, *overhang*;  
*threaten.*

inimicus, *a, um, unfriendly*; ini-  
mīcus, ī, *M., (personal) enemy.*

iūdex, iūdicis, *M., judge.*

prīmō, *at first.*

similis, *e, like.*

videor, vidēri, vīsus sum (*pass.*  
*of videō*), *seem.*

## EXERCISES

1. Poenam quae sibi impendet nōn timent.
2. Ego tibi amicus sum, sed tū mihi inimicus.
3. Haec facere iūdicibus nōn licet.
4. Ēgredere ex urbe et mihi hunc timōrem ēripe.
5. Arx dēfendenda est eīs quibus est māgna virtūs.
6. Discessus peditum fugae simillimus esse vidēbātur.
7. Caesarī omnia deerant quae auxiliō exercituī erant.
8. Illi sōlī populō Rōmānō bellum inferre posse mihi videntur.



1. This war was not like any of the other wars. 2. The captives were rescued from the hands of the enemy. 3. The judges praised those who had spared their enemies. 4. He seems to us to have forgotten almost all his friends. 5. Therefore Caesar determined to choose this place for a camp. 6. The ships that are wanting must be procured by you immediately. 7. A high mountain, which overhangs the road, is very near our camp. 8. At first the citizens were unwilling to open the gates for the consul.

## LESSON LI

### SYNTAX OF ACCUSATIVE

(New) §§ 387; 390, *c*; 391; 392; 393, *a*; 395; 396.

(Old) §§ 237; 238, *b*; 239, 1, *a*, note 2, 2, *b*, *c*; 240, *a*.

### VOCABULARY

appellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call*.

apud, prep. with acc., *among*,  
*with*.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask*.

sententia, ae, F., *opinion*.

trādūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum,  
*lead across*.

uxor, ōris, F., *wife*.

vīta, ae, F., *life*.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, *live*.

### EXERCISES

1. Caesar omnem equitātum pontem trādūxerat. 2. Postrīdiē in senātū eōs sententiam rogāvit. 3. Apud Helvētiōs hīc vir plūrimum poterat. 4. Cōsul Catilinam hostem patriae appellāvit. 5. Tertiam aciem praesidiō novissimō agminī mīsīt. 6. In meā vītā māiōrem audāciam numquam vīdī. 7. Hīc nōn solum vīvit, sed etiam in senātum venit. 8. Nūntius dē periculō uxōris liberōrumque mē certiōrem facit.

1. The Roman people elected Cicero consul. 2. By the Romans all these tribes are called Gauls. 3. This one thing I now wish to ask you. 4. Near this hill Pompey's forces resisted



the enemy. 5. The wife of that cruel man lived a most wretched life. 6. What is the opinion of the judges concerning this crime? 7. Among our ancestors there were many wise and famous men. 8. After the departure of the ambassadors he led his army across the river.

## AENEAS

Aenēās cum multis Trōiānīs, quibus ferrum Graecōrum pepercerat, ex Asiā fūgit et in Ītaliā pervēnit. Ibi rēx eum benignē recēpit et Lāvīniā filiam in mātirimōnium dedit. Deinde Aenēās urbem condidit, quam Lāvīnium appellāvit. Post Aenēae mortem Ascanius, eius filius, rēgnāvit.

## LESSON LII

## SYNTAX OF ABLATIVE

(New) §§ 399; 400; 401; 403, *a*; 404, *c*; 405, note 2; 406; 407.

(Old) §§ 242; 243, *a*; 244, *a*; 245, *c*; 246, remark; 247, *a*.

## VOCABULARY

accipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum, *receive*.

causa, ae, F., *cause*; abl. causā, *for the sake of*.

cōsultum, ī, N., *decree*.

diligentia, ae, F., *diligence*.

liberō, āre, āvī, ātum, *free*.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *be born*.

praetor, ōris, M., *praetor*.

vix, *scarcely, with difficulty*.

## EXERCISES

1. Puerī diligentīā omnibus laudandī sunt. 2. Cōsul patre nōbilissimō nātus est. 3. Eōrum manūs tēlaque ā tē vix continēbam. 4. Rēs pūblica summīs bellī periculīs liberāta est. 5. Quis iūstior aut fidēlior hōc praetōre esse potest? 6. Ibi trēs legiōnēs ā Caesare praesidī causā relictāe erant. 7. Senātūs cōsultō eī quī contrā patriam pūgnāverant interfectī sunt. 8. Illā calamitāte libertātem āmisimus quam ā māiōribus accēpimus.

1. I am willing to receive many wounds for your sake.
2. Nothing is dearer to you than your wives and children.
3. Caesar is said to have been born of very famous ancestors.
4. Scarcely a third part of the army was rescued from that danger.
5. He was able to find out from you the cause of his friend's death.
6. By a decree of the senate another legion was enrolled by the praetor.
7. It is necessary to endure all these things for the sake of the commonwealth.
8. Because of your diligence the state will be freed from the fear of danger.

## LESSON LIII

### SYNTAX OF ABLATIVE, *Continued*

(New) §§ 409, *a*; 410; 412; 413; 414; 415, *a*; 416; 418, *b*.

(Old) §§ 248, *a*, *c* 1, 2; 249; 250; 251, *a*; 252; 253; 245, 1.

### VOCABULARY

celeritās, ātis, F., *speed*.

dīgnus, a, um, *worthy*.

incrēdibilis, e, *incredible*.

ingenium, ī, N., *genius, ability*.

paulum, adv., *a little*; paulō, *by a little, a little*.

praestō, stāre, stitī, stitum, *excel*.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, enjoy*.

vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditum, *sell*.

### EXERCISES

1. Rēx Caesarī patriam pecūniā vēndidit.
2. Fossa corporibus militum complēta est.
3. Haec summā diligentīā nōbīs gerenda erant.
4. Ille facinora poenā gravissimā dīgna commiserat.
5. Aeduī auxiliō populī Rōmānī saepe ūtēbantur.
6. Equitēs Belgārum incrēdibilī celeritāte fūgērunt.
7. Hīc lēgātus, ēgregiā fidē, omnibus ingeniō praestat.
8. Paulō post mediam noctem cum duābus legiōnibus profectus est.

1. Our ships excelled these in speed. 2. Was there a man of greater ability than Caesar? 3. Pompey will sell the slaves that he has with him. 4. This road is five miles longer than the other. 5. Your incredible valor is worthy of the greatest rewards. 6. Caesar with all his forces crossed the Alps by a shorter road. 7. Because of the speed of the enemy's cavalry we shall not be able to use our javelins. 8. The Gauls, having gone forth a little from the town, attacked them with great violence.

## LESSON LIV

SYNTAX OF ABLATIVE, *Continued*: ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE(New) §§ 419, *a*; 420.(Old) § 255, *a, d*.

## VOCABULARY

atque, *and*.dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *despair of*.incendium, ī, *N., fire*.modus, ī, *M., manner, kind*.multum, *adv., much*; multō,*much, by far*.nātūra, *ae, F., nature*.quidem, *indeed*; nē . . . quidem,*not even* (New, § 322 *f*;Old, § 151 *e*).vetus, veteris, *old*.

## EXERCISES

1. Dēspērātā salūte,<sup>1</sup> omnēs praetōrī sē dēdidērunt. 2. Mea patria mihi vitā ipsā multō cārīor est. 3. Ipse, nātūrā locī cognitā, sex cohortēs ibi reliquit. 4. Eō mortuō, filiī domum agrōsque vēndere studēbant. 5. Nē veteribus quidem lēgibus dignus ēīus modī poenā fuisset. 6. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, nostrī sine impedimentīs māne discessērunt. 7. Catilīna orbem

<sup>1</sup> The ablative absolute is frequently equivalent to a clause introduced by *when, after, since*, etc.; and this clause is often in the active voice.

terrārum caede atque incendiis vāstāre cupiēbat. 8. Pompēiō et Crassō cōsulibus, senātus eum socium atque amicum appellāverat.

1. This must be done in the same manner. 2. I shall not complain much as long as you are safe.<sup>1</sup> 3. Ought we to trust a man by nature wicked and cruel? 4. Having reported these things, they went forth with great uproar. 5. Not even the immortal gods will aid you in this matter. 6. When the city was burned, a few were rescued from the fire. 7. After the old army was routed, a new commander finished the war. 8. Since they despaired of victory, by far the largest part of them sought safety in flight.

#### CONSPIRACY OF CATILINE

M. Tulliō Cicerōne et C. Antōniō cōsulibus, L. Catilina, vir generis nōbilissimī, sed ingenī pessimī, contrā patriam coniūrāvit cum quibusdam clārīs sed audācibus virīs. Ā Cicerōne ex urbe pulsus est, socii ēius capti in carcere necātī sunt. Ab Antōniō, alterō cōsule, Catilīna proeliō victus est et interfectus.

### LESSON LV

#### CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME AND PLACE

(New) §§ 423, 1, 2; 425; 426, 1, 2, 3; 427, 1, 2, 3; 429 a.

(Old) §§ 256, 1, 2; 257; 258, 1, 2, a, b, c, 1, 2, g.

#### VOCABULARY

aestās, ātis, F., *summer*.

īnferior, ius, *lower*.

memoria, ae, F., *memory*.

pēs, pedis, M., *foot*.

prōgredior, gredi, gressus sum, *advance*.

rūrsus, *again*.

spatium, ī, N., *distance; interval*.

tempus, temporis, N., *time*.

<sup>1</sup> Use ablative absolute.

## EXERCISES

1. Lēgatiō tōtam aestātem Athēnīs manēbit. 2. Quīnque diēbus domō rūsus proficiscēmur. 3. Num cōpiae hostium māgnū spatium absunt? 4. Ex inferiōre locō tēla facile conicere nōn poterant. 5. In hīs locis mūrī decem pedibus altiōrēs sunt. 6. Tertiā hōrā Caesar in aequiōrem locum prōgreditur. 7. Veterum iniūriarū memoriā lēgātōs Rōmam nōn mīsērunt. 8. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitus Rōmānus ex prōvinciā exierat.

1. These old friends lived many years at Rome. 2. In this interval some preferred to return home. 3. The Belgians fortified the town with a ditch fifteen feet wide. 4. The allies again went forth from Corinth and attacked the enemy. 5. At about the same time the enemy's cavalry were seen in our camp. 6. Within the memory of our fathers this tribe had defeated the Romans. 7. In the middle of the summer Caesar withdrew his legions from Germany. 8. Having formed this plan, we advanced to the lower part of the hill.

## LESSON LVI

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

(New) §§ 439; 441; 442; 444; 446; 450.

(Old) §§ 256, remark; 267, *b*; 268; 269 *a*, 1, 2; 311 *a*.

## VOCABULARY

aggredior, gredī, gressus sum,  
*attack.*

commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum,  
*mention.*

nē, *not.*

quid, *why?*

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take.*

supplicium, ī, n., *punishment*; sūmō  
supplicium dē, *inflict punishment*  
*on.*

utinam, *would that!*

vigilia, ae, f., *watch.*

## EXERCISES

1. Vitam civium tegere nōn potuissent. 2. Quid faciam? Amīcī mē dēseruērunt. 3. Nōlīte parcere eīs quī nōbīs inimīcī fuērunt. 4. Nē ūtāmur hīs gladiīs prō pessimō cōnsule. 5. Utinam quidem satis auxiliī ad vōs mīsissēmus! 6. Quid omnēs causās hūius calamitātis commemorem? 7. Tertiā vigiliā ab latere apertō Belgās aggrediantur. 8. Senātus mōre māiōrum summum supplicium dē tē sūmat.

1. Would that my father were present among us! 2. Let them not take a large part of the booty for themselves. 3. Why should we not inflict punishment on our enemies? 4. May the immortal gods always protect this commonwealth. 5. Do not forget the recent slaughter of your wives and children. 6. I should be unwilling to mention the injuries that we have received. 7. When the council has been called together, let us ask each one his opinion. 8. Having opened the gates, we would have attacked the Gauls before the second watch.

## LESSON LVII

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES. — CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

(New) §§ 482, 1, 2; 483; 484, *a, b*; 469; 485 *e*; 530; 531, 1, 2, *a*.

(Old) §§ 285, 1, 2; 286, *remark*; 276 *d*; 287 *e*; 317, 1, 2, *b*.

## VOCABULARY

circumveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, <i>surround</i> .	postea, <i>afterwards</i> .
maritimus, <i>a, um, maritime</i> ;	quō, <i>that, in order that</i> .
ōra maritima, <i>sea-coast</i> .	trādō, <i>dere, didī, ditum, deliver up</i> .
nē, <i>that . . . not, lest</i> .	trīduum, <i>ī, N., three days</i> .
	victor, ōris, <i>M., conqueror</i> .



## EXERCISES

1. Rōmam veniunt ut mē videant. 2. Rōmam vērunt ut mē vidērent. 3. Nervii fugiēbant nē ā nostris circumvenirentur. 4. Nūntiōs mittāmus quī maritimās civitatēs incitent. 5. Militēs cohortātur quō hostibus ācrius resistant. 6. Postea arma quae in vicum collata erant tradiderunt. 7. Quō māior virtūs militibus esset, Caesar praemia pollicitus erat. 8. Victōrēs spatium trīduī morātī sunt ut ōram maritimam pācārent.

1. I shall write in order to praise<sup>1</sup> my friend. 2. I had written in order to praise my friend. 3. Caesar will leave one legion to defend the sea-coast. 4. The band which he led out from Rome was afterwards surrounded. 5. Three days before, we had sent two cohorts to plunder the fields. 6. The allies advance with great speed in order that the conquerors may not burn the town. 7. When the arms and baggage had been delivered up, the Belgians sought peace. 8. They fortified the camp with a rampart in order that they might more easily keep off the enemy.

## HANNIBAL

Hannibal post mortem patris equitātū praefuit. Hasdrubale quoque interfectō, imperātor tōtius exercitūs factus est. Omnēs gentēs Hispāniae bellō subēgit atque Saguntum vī expūgnāvit. Māximis cōpiis comparātis, in Ītaliā profectus est ut bellum cum Rōmānis gereret. Postquam ad Alpēs vēnit, quās nēmō cum exercitū ante eum trānsierat, gentēs quae prohibēre trānsitū cōnatae sunt superāvit. Cōpiās trādūxit et complūribus proeliis Rōmānōs vīcit.

<sup>1</sup> The infinitive must *never* be used in Latin to express purpose.



## LESSON LVIII

## CLAUSES OF RESULT. — CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

(New) §§ 537, 1, 2, *a, c*; 538; 535, *a, b*.(Old) §§ 319, 1, 2, *a*, remark; 320, *a, b*.

## VOCABULARY

auctōritās, ātis, F., *authority*,  
*influence*.effugiō, fugere, fūgī, *escape*.ita, *so*.plēbs, plēbis, F., *common people*.tam, *so*.tantus, a, um, *so great, so much*.tot, indecl., *so many*.ut, *so that, that*.

## EXERCISES

1. Ego nōn is sum quī glōriæ cupidus sim. 2. Nē commemorēmus iniūriās quās nōbīs intulit. 3. Nihil subsidī erat quod ad eum mittī posset. 4. Belgæ erant sōlī quī victōrēs ā finibus prohibērent. 5. Castra ita dēfendēmus ut hostēs expūgnāre nōn possint. 6. Caesar tot legiōnēs coēgerat ut Pompēius eīs resistere nōn auderet. 7. Equitēs tam fortiter pūgnāvērunt ut nēmō hostium effugeret. 8. Apud plēbem erat tantæ auctōritātis ut omnēs eī māximē cōfiderent.

1. There is no tribe that the Romans have not overcome. 2. Who is there that does not wish to live many years? 3. So great was the speed of our cavalry that they excelled all. 4. Is your father so cruel as to desire to drive you from home? 5. The traders were so terrified that they departed the same night. 6. The rest were trying to escape that they might not be killed by the barbarians. 7. The leader was so dear to the common people that we feared his influence. 8. He will station so many soldiers there that the Aeduans will not be able to advance.

## LESSON LIX

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.—CLAUSES WITH QUĪN AND QUŌMINUS

(New) §§ 561, *a*; 563; 564; 566; 568; 569, 1, 2; 570; 572; 558, *a, b*.(Old) §§ 329; 331, *f, h*; 332, *a, 1, 2*; 333; 319 *c, d*; 332 *g*, remark.

## VOCABULARY

accidō, cidere, cidī, *happen*.cōnsuētūdō, dīnis, *F., custom*.dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *doubt*;*hesitate*.efficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, *bring about*.

persuādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum,

*persuade*.quīn, *that*.quod, *the fact that, that*.quōminus, *that not, from*.

## EXERCISES

1. His rēbus acciderat ut paucī incolumēs effugerent. 2. Timēbāmus ut tempestātem vitāre possēmus. 3. Hōc mē commovet, quod tantum auctōritātis unī datum est. 4. His persuāsum est ut paulō ante tertiam vigiliam redīrent. 5. Caesar efficiet ut commeātus sine morā ad sē portārī possit. 6. Lēgātī nōn dubitant quīn Rōmānī Aeduīs libertātem ēreptūrī sint. 7. Apud illōs haec cōnsuētūdō erat, ut finitimās gentēs iuvārent. 8. Nihil est quod nōs impediat quōminus cum eīs pācem cōfirmēmus.

1. I fear that you will persuade my friends to desert me. 2. It was their custom to demand that hostages be given. 3. The king commands his men not to encamp near the swamp. 4. What hindered them from attacking the enemy with great violence? 5. It often happened that a great multitude heard Cicero in the forum. 6. He did not doubt that the judges would inflict punishment on the captives. 7. He had brought it about that his men did not hesitate to sustain our attack. 8. Nothing is more disgraceful than this, that we have delivered up our children (as) hostages.

## LESSON LX

## CAUSAL CLAUSES

(New) § 540, 1, 2, a, c, d.

(Old) § 321, 1, 2, b, c.

## VOCABULARY

adducō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum,

*bring; induce.*condiciō, ōnis, F., *condition, terms.**cum, since.*dēcernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *de-*  
*cree.*propterea, *on this account.*quoniam, *since.*rēgnum, ī, N., *royal power,*  
*kingdom.*suscipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum,  
*undertake.*

## EXERCISES

1. Quae<sup>1</sup> cum ita sint, quid dubitēs in exsilium exīre?  
 2. Senātus dēcrēvit ut cōsul bellum susciperet. 3. Principibus  
 facile persuāsērunt ut rēgnum occupārent. 4. Nervīi reliquōs  
 accūsābant quī Rōmānis sē dēdidissent. 5. Nullā condiciōne  
 addūcī potuērunt ut agrōs vēnderent. 6. Belgae māximē ferī  
 sunt omnium propterea quod longissimē absunt. 7. Quoniam  
 Germānī cōpiās Rhēnum trādūcunt, omnēs cīvēs armēmus.  
 8. Aeduī, quod premerentur, lēgātōs misērunt quī Caesarem  
 auxilium rogārent.

1. He fled from his kingdom because the army had been  
 defeated. 2. Caesar commanded that hostages should be  
 brought to him. 3. They are coming through our province  
 because they have no other road. 4. We do not doubt that  
 the terms of peace will be most favorable. 5. Since they were  
 in sight of Caesar, the cavalry advanced with greater speed.  
 6. It was decreed that the severest punishment be inflicted on  
 them. 7. They will undertake the matter on this condition,

<sup>1</sup> *These things.* See (New) § 308 f; (Old) § 201 e.

that they receive great rewards. 8. Since the march of our army was hindered by the swamps, the enemy easily escaped.

#### POMPEY SUBDUES THE PIRATES AND MITHRIDATES

Cum praedonēs omnia maria infestarent, ut Rōmānīs nāvigātiō tūta nōn esset, Pompēius huic bellō praefectus est. Quod intrā paucōs mēnsēs māximā celeritatē cōnfecit. Postea eī bellum etiam contrā rēgem Mithridātem decrētum est. Quō susceptō, Mithridātem nocturnō proeliō vicit, castra diripuit, quadrāgintā milia eius militum occidit. Mithridatēs ipse cum uxōre et duōbus comitibus fugit.

### LESSON LXI

#### CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.—CLAUSES OF PROVISIO

(New) §§ 527, *d*; 549; 528.

(Old) §§ 313, *d, e*; 314.

#### VOCABULARY

colloquium, ī, N., *conference*.

cum, *though*.

dummodo, *provided that*.

opus, operis, N., *work*.

praesertim, *especially*.

quamquam, *although*.

retineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum, *detain, keep*.

tamen, *yet, nevertheless*.

#### EXERCISES

1. Cum locum colloquii iam delēgeris, adesse nōn poterō.
2. Aeduōs accūsābat, praesertim cum bellum prō eis suscepisset.
3. Vōs rūsus aggrediēmur propterea quod obsidēs nōndum mīsis-tis.
4. Quamquam hī sunt tuī inimīcī, efficiam ut tibi parcant.
5. Cum lēgātis praesidium pollicitus esset, tamen retenti et caesi sunt.
6. Patria māgnō periculō liberābitur, dummodo Catilīna suōs sēcum educat.
7. Cum acriter pūgnātum esset, nostrī ab opere discēdere coacti sunt.
8. Quamquam tanta auctoritās in tē erat, tamen tibi eā ūti nōn licēbat.

1. Though the town was captured, the Belgians kept part of their arms. 2. Although you have made war on us, yet we shall make peace with you. 3. Why should we hesitate to aid them, especially since they are our allies? 4. Though they were hindered by storms, they finished the work in a short time. 5. I shall return about noon, provided that your master remains at home. 6. Though they had not been defeated, yet they sent hostages the next winter. 7. The leaders will not come to the conference, because they do not trust him. 8. Although our camp was three miles away, we heard the uproar in the citadel.

## LESSON LXII

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES

(New) §§ 543; 545; 546, notes 1, 3; 547; 551, *a, b, c*; 553; 555; 556.

(Old) §§ 324; 325, *c*; 327, *a*; 328, *a*.

### VOCABULARY

accēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, <i>approach.</i>	parum, adv., <i>little, too little</i> ; comp. minus, <i>less</i> ; sup. minimē, <i>least</i> .
cum, <i>when.</i>	priusquam, <i>before.</i>
dum, <i>while; until.</i>	ubi, <i>when.</i>
nōnnūllus, a, um, <i>some.</i>	vadum, ī, N., <i>ford.</i>

### EXERCISES

1. Cum Gallī prōgressī sunt, nōnnūllae cohortēs fūgērunt.  
2. Contendimus ut eōs aggredērēmur priusquam effugere possent.  
3. Nōbīs nōn exspectandum est dum cōpiae hostium augeantur.  
4. Nōn cōstitērunt priusquam ad vada flūminis pervēnērunt.  
5. Ubi impedīmenta nostra ab eīs vīsa sunt, impetum subitō fēcērunt.  
6. Cum proelium committet, cohortēs minimē firmās in hībernīs relinquet.  
7. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Germānī nostrōs circumvenīre cōnābantur.  
8. Cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, omnēs pācem petiērunt.

1. He will write you a letter before he goes to Rome.
2. When Cicero delivers a speech, all men desire to hear him.
3. After the works were finished, the soldiers were kept in the camp.
4. He waited for four hours until the rest of the ships came together.
5. When Caesar approached, some tried to cross the river by the ford.
6. The Nervii led out their forces before our line of battle was drawn up.
7. While he was delaying for the sake of supplies, the enemy besieged the town.
8. Since they have no cavalry, they can less easily keep off the neighboring tribes.

## LESSON LXIII

### CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

(New) §§ 512, *a*; 513, 1, 2; 514 (entire); 515, *a*; 516, 1, 2, *a, b, c*; 517; 527 *c*.  
 (Old) §§ 304, *a, d*, 1, 2; 305 (entire); 306, *a*; 307, 1, 2, *a, b, c*; 308; 313 *c*.

### VOCABULARY

beneficium, ī, N., <i>kindness</i> .	quis, quid, <i>any one, anything</i>
etsī, <i>although</i> .	(New, § 149 <i>b</i> ; Old,
grātia, ae, F., <i>favor; influence</i> .	§ 105 <i>d</i> ).
nisi, <i>if not, unless</i> .	sī, <i>if</i> .
obțineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum, <i>obtain</i> .	ut, with indicative, <i>as</i> .

### EXERCISES

1. Sī quid vultis, redite trīduō.
2. Sī id fēceris, grātia atque amīcitia nōbīs tēcum erit.
3. Hōc beneficium nōn acciperet, sī frāter meus vīveret.
4. Sī hōc et vīdistī et audistī, cūr nūntiāre dubitāvistī?
5. Nē ūnus quidem effūgisset, nisi subsidium missum esset.
6. Sī quid Rōmānīs accidat, per Helvētiōs rēgnum facile obtineāmus.
7. Etsī multō māiōrem exercitum habēbat, tamen suōs ā proeliō continuit.
8. Hīc pāgus, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, circiter decem milia passuum abērat.



1. If we follow you, will you lead us home? 2. Even if you should forget my kindness, I would aid you. 3. If any one of you fears the enemy, let him remain in the camp. 4. If the labor were greater, I should not be able to endure it. 5. He himself, as I have said, would have obtained the highest power in his own state. 6. If this had been done, he would now have great influence among the common people. 7. Although Caesar had not yet learned their plans, yet he led his army across the river. 8. You would have lost all your fortunes, if we had not placed Pompey in command of the army.

### CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL

C. Iūlius Caesar cum L. Bibulō cōsul factus est. Cum eī Gallia cum decem legiōnibus dēcrēta esset, eō profectus est. Prīmō Helvētiōs vīcit, deinde Ariovistum, rēgem Germānōrum, aggressus proeliō superāvit. Domuit autem novem annīs omnem ferē Galliam, quae est inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum, et Oceanum. Britannīs bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cognitum erat, et eōs quoque victōs, obsidibus acceptīs, stipendiārīos fēcit.

## LESSON LXIV

### INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—THE INFINITIVE

(New) §§ 573; 574; 575, *a*; 452; 454; 456.

(Old) §§ 334, *a*; 270, *b*; 271.

### VOCABULARY

cōsuēscō, suēscere, suēvī, suētum,  
*become accustomed; perf., be  
accustomed.*

invītus, *a, um, unwilling, against  
one's will.*

ostendō, tendere, tendī, tentum,  
*show.*

paulātīm, *gradually.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quae-  
sītum, *inquire.*

quantus, *a, um, how great.*

revertor, revertī, (revertī, perf.  
act.), *return.*

servitūs, ūtis, *F., slavery.*



## EXERCISES

1. Ille cōnsuēvit omnēs captīvōs in servitūtem trādere.  
 2. Postquam lēgātī revertērunt, ostendit quid fierī vellet.  
 3. Ariovistum ā populō Rōmānō impediri nōn oportet. 4. Ab  
 hīs quaerit quantās cōpiās comparāre possint. 5. Caesarī  
 placuit milītēs paulātim prōgredi<sup>1</sup> iubere. 6. Cognōscēmus qui-  
 bus ex cīvitatibus socii ventūrī sint. 7. Cum Helvētīi, Caesare  
 invitō, flūmen trānsirent, eōs sequi cōstituit. 8. Sī Rōmānī  
 adfuissent, Germānōs diripere oppida nōn passī essent.

1. Men often become accustomed to bear great labor.  
 2. They will inquire what the senate has determined to do.  
 3. Therefore Cicero will be permitted to return from exile.  
 4. The consuls saw how great a disaster threatened the com-  
 monwealth. 5. We asked them why they endured this disgrace-  
 ful slavery. 6. It is difficult to compel me against my will to  
 undertake this matter. 7. I showed them how great a multi-  
 tude of men the enemy were bringing together. 8. When  
 Caesar's approach was reported, the enemy began gradually  
 to retreat.

<sup>1</sup> The verbs *iubeō*, *cōgō*, *patior*, and a few others, take as *object* an infinitive with subject accusative. When these verbs are used in the passive, the *object* infinitive becomes *complementary*.

## LESSON LXV

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

(New) §§ 578; 579; 580; 581; 582; 584.

(Old) §§ 335; 336, 1, 2, *a* 1, 2; 330 *b* 1; 336 A.

## VOCABULARY

arbitror, āri, ātus sum, <i>think.</i>	intellegō, legere, lēxi, lēctum, <i>know,</i>
cōnsequor, sequī, secūtus sum,	<i>understand.</i>
<i>overtake; gain.</i>	pār, paris, <i>equal.</i>
exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum, <i>think,</i>	sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, <i>know.</i>
<i>consider.</i>	spērō, āre, āvī, ātum, <i>hope.</i>
initium, ī, N., <i>beginning.</i>	

## EXERCISES

1. "Gallī," inquit nūntius, "oppidum oppūgnant." 2. Nūntius dīcit Gallōs oppidum oppūgnāre. 3. Spērāmus sociōs fore māgnae virtūtis. 4. Nostrōs Belgīs parēs esse vīribus scīebat. 5. Exercitum ā barbarīs iam pulsum esse cognōvit. 6. Helvētīi sē angustōs finēs habēre arbitrābantur. 7. Dīxit sē intellegere equitēs initium fugae fēcisse. 8. Caesar exīstimāvit sē reliquās cōpiās hostium cōnsequī posse.

1. The tenth legion is the bravest of all. 2. Caesar considered that<sup>1</sup> the tenth legion was the bravest of all. 3. We know that the city has been taken by the enemy. 4. The praetor hoped that the allies would quickly send him aid. 5. It is said that through you they easily gained their liberty. 6. They thought that an equal number of legions was being enrolled. 7. Caesar is said to have mentioned this at the beginning of his speech. 8. He understood that they had been compelled to return on account of the want of grain.

<sup>1</sup> The conjunction *that*, introducing the principal clause in indirect discourse, must *never* be translated.

## LESSON LXVI

INDIRECT DISCOURSE, *Continued*

(New) §§ 580; 583; 584; 585; 586; 588; 590.

(Old) §§ 336, 2, *b*; 336 A; 336 B; 338; 339.

## VOCABULARY

amplius, *more*.dīmittō, mittere, mīsī, missum,  
*send; dismiss*.incolō, colere, coluī, *inhabit, dwell*.iūs, iūris, N., *right, law*.ōrdō, ordinis, M., *order, rank*.potestās, ātis, F., *power*.putō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think*.sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsū,  
*perceive*.

## EXERCISES

1. Nūntiat militēs nūllō certō ōrdine ēgredī quod perturbātī sint. 2. Caesar dixit, sī pāce ūtī vellent, obsidēs statim mitterent. 3. Cognōvit suōs, cum amplius sex hōrīs pūgnātum esset, pulsōs (esse). 4. Certiōrēs fiunt Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, in armīs esse. 5. Conciliō dimissō, sēnsit principēs nōn factūrōs (esse) ea quae pollicitī essent. 6. Fāma erat eum, quamquam iūre condemnātus esset, tuō beneficiō ēreptum (esse). 7. Ariovistus respondit sē Gallīs bellum nōn intulisse. Cūr in suōs finēs Caesar venīret? 8. Id sibi suscipiendum (esse) putābat, quod intellexeret oppida nostra in potestāte eōrum esse.

1. He said that the enemy could not attack us while we remained in the town. 2. They think that they will come into our power if they do not give hostages. 3. I understand that there are some men in the state who have been friendly to Catiline. 4. We heard that the tribunes had been sent to find out why you were unwilling to come. 5. Do you know that the Belgians inhabit that part of Gaul which is nearest to Germany? 6. He says that the centurions of all ranks have

come together in order to discuss these things. 7. Caesar perceived that the place, which was not more than two miles away, was by nature suitable for a camp. 8. The king had replied that it was the law of war that the captives should deliver up their arms to the conquerors.

### ASSASSINATION OF CAESAR

Caesar, bellis cīvilibus cōfectis, Rōmam rediit. Agere insolentius coepit et contrā cōsuētūdinem libertātis Rōmānae. Quārē in eum coniūrātum est ā sexāgintā amplius senātoribus equitibusque Rōmānis, Brūtō et Cassiō ducibus, et eum Īdibus Mārtiis in senātū cōfodere dēcrētum. Itaque Caesar, cum eō diē inter cēterōs in cūriam vēnisset, tribus et vīginti vulneribus cōfossus est.

## LESSON LXVII

### PARTICIPLES. — GERUNDIVE. — GERUND. — SUPINE

(New) §§ 155, *a, b, c*; 496; 500, 2; 501; 502; 503, *a*; 506, note 2; 509; 510.

(Old) §§ 109, *a, b, c*; 292; 294, *b*; 295; 296; 300, note; 302; 303.

### VOCABULARY

facultās, ātis, F., *opportunity*.

hiems, hiemis, F., *winter*.

impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *obtain*

(*by request*).

opīniō, ōnis, F., *opinion; reputation*.

parātus, a, um, *ready*.

simul, *at the same time*.

studium, ī, N., *desire; zeal*.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*.

### EXERCISES

1. Simul dixērunt sē ad bellum gerendum esse parātōs. 2. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar ĩnsidiās veritus discēdere cōstituit. 3. Hanc opīniōnem victōriā nostrā cōfirmātam (esse) exīstīmant. 4. Facultās per prōvinciam itineris faciendī Helvētiīs

nōn danda est. 5. Crēbrae lēgatiōnēs ad eum veniēbant dē iniūriīs hostium questum. 6. Arbitrābāmur pecūniam impetrandam (esse) bellī cōficiendī causā. 7. Proximā hieme Gallī spē praedandī studiōque pūgnandī convēnērunt. 8. Sī hōc optimum factū putārem, ūnam hōram eum vīvere nōn paterer.

1. Induced by the hope of gaining liberty, they excelled all in zeal. 2. By promising great rewards he increased his influence among the people. 3. The consul, deserted by his friends, sought an opportunity of escaping. 4. At the same time he was informed that the rest of the ships were ready to sail. 5. They hope that the messengers sent to Rome will obtain this from the senate. 6. Caesar hastened to the right wing to encourage the soldiers, because they feared the enemy. 7. After these things have been accomplished, we shall remain the whole winter in farther Gaul. 8. On account of the great reputation of the enemy for valor, the Aeduans come to him to seek aid.



# SELECTIONS FROM ROMAN HISTORY

## 1. FOUNDATION OF ROME, 753 B.C.

Silvius Procās, rēx Albānōrum, duōs filiōs reliquit, Numitōrem et Amūlium. Hōrum minor nātū, Amūlius, frātrī optiōnem dedit, utrum rēgnum habēre vellet, an bona, quae pater reliquisset. Numitor paterna bona praetulit; Amūlius rēgnum obtinuit.

Amūlius, ut rēgnum firmissimē possidēret, Numitōris filium per insidiās interēmit et filiam frātris, Rhēam Silviam, virginem Vestālem fēcit. Nam hīs Vestae sacerdōtibus nōn licet virō nūbere. Sed haec ā Mārte geminōs filiōs, Rōmulum et Remum, peperit. Hōc cum Amūlius comperisset, mātrem in vincula coniēcit, puerōs autem in Tiberim abicī iussit.

Forte Tiberis aqua ultrā ripam sē effūderat, et, cum puerī in vadō essent positī, aqua refluēns eōs in siccō reliquit. Ad eōrum vāgītum lupa accurrit, eōsque ūberibus suis aluit. Quod vidēns Faustulus quīdam, pāstor illius regiōnis, puerōs sustulit, et uxōrī Accae Lārentiae nūtriendōs dedit.

Sic Rōmulus et Remus pueritiam inter pāstōrēs trānsēgērunt. Cum adolēvissent et forte comperissent, quis avus ipsōrum, quae mātēr fuisset, Amūlium interfēcērunt, et Numitōrī avō rēgnum restituērunt. Tum urbem condidērunt in monte Aventīnō, quam Rōmulus dē suō nōmine Rōmam vocāvit. Haec cum moenibus circumdarētur, Remus occīsus est, dum frātre irridēns moenia trānsilit.

## 2. NUMA POMPILIUS, 715–673 B.C.

Post Rōmulī mortem ūnīus annī interrēgnum fuit. Quō elāpsō, Numa Pompilius, Curibus, oppidō in agrō Sabīnōrum,



nātus, rēx creātus est. Hīc vir bellum quidem nūllum gessit ; sed nōn minus tamen cīvitatī prōfuit quam Rōmulus. Nam et lēgēs dedit et sacra plūrima instituit, ut populī barbarī et bellīcōsī mōrēs molliret. Āram Vestae cōsecrāvit, et ignem in ārā perpetuō alendum virginibus dedit. Omnia autem quae faceret sē nymphae Ēgeriae, coniugis suae, monitū facere dicēbat. Morbō periit et in Iāniculō monte sepultus est.

### 3. SERVIUS TULLIUS, 578-534 B.C.

Post Tarquinius Priscus Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium, genitus ex nōbilī fēminā, captivā tamen et famulā. Cum in domō Tarquinī educārētur, flamma in ēius capite vīsa est. Hōc prōdigiō Tanaquil ei summam dignitatem portendī intellēxit, et coniugī persuāsit, ut eum sicutī liberōs suōs educāret. Cum adolēvisset, rēx ei filiam in mātrimonium dedit.

Cum Priscus Tarquinius occisus esset, Tanaquil dē superiōre parte domūs populum allocūta est, dicēns : Rēgem grave quidem, sed nōn lētāle vulnus accēpisse ; eum petere, ut populus, dum convalesceret, Serviō Tullio oboediret. Sic Servius regnāre coepit, sed bene imperium administrāvit. Montēs trēs urbī adiūnxit. Prīmus omnium cēsum ordināvit. Sub eō Rōma habuit capitum octōgintā tria mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum eis quī in agrīs erant.

### 4. EXPULSION OF TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS, 510 B.C.

Tarquinius Superbus cognōmen mōribus meruit. Bellō tamen strēnuus plūrēs finitimōrum populōrum vīcit. Templum Iovis in Capitoliō aedificāvit. Postea, dum Ardeam oppūgnat, urbem Latī, imperium perdidit. Nam cum filius ēius Lucretiae, nōbilissimae fēminae, coniugī Tarquinī Collātini, vim fēcisset, haec sē ipsa occidit in cōspectū maritī, patris, amicōrum, postquam eōs obtestāta est, ut hanc iniūriam ulcīscerentur.

Hanc ob causam L. Brūtus, Collātīnus, aliīque nōnnūllī in exitium rēgis coniūrāvērunt populōque persuāsērunt ut eī portās urbis clauderet. Exercitus quoque, quī urbem Ardeam cum rēge oppugnābat, eum reliquit. Itaque fūgit cum uxōre et liberīs suīs. Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā trēs.

#### 5. ESTABLISHMENT OF THE REPUBLIC, 509 B.C.

Hinc cōsulēs coepēre prō ūnō rēge duo creārī, ut, sī ūnus malus esset, alter eum coērceret. Annuum iīs imperium tribūtum est, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis insolentiōrēs redderentur. Fuērunt igitur annō primō, expulsīs rēgibus, cōsulēs L. Iūnius Brūtus, ācerrimus libertātis vindex, et Tarquinius Collātīnus, marītus Lucrētiaē. Sed Collātīnō paulō post dignitās dētrācta est. Placuerat enim, nē quis ex Tarquiniōrum familiā Rōmae manēret. Ergō cum omnī patrimonīō suō ex urbe migrāvit, et in ēius locum Valerius Pūblicola cōsul factus est.

#### 6. THE DECENVIRS, 452-450 B.C.

Annō trecentēsīmō et alterō ab urbe conditā decemvirī creātī sunt, quī cīvitatī lēgēs scriberent. Hī primō annō bene ēgērunt; secundō autem dominātiōnem exercēre coepērunt. Sed cum ūnus eōrum, Appius Claudius, virginem ingenuam, Virgīniam, centuriōnis filiam, corrumpere vellet, pater eam occīdit. Tum ad milītēs profūgit eōsque ad sēditionem commōvit. Sublāta est decemvirōrum potestās, ipsīque omnēs aut morte aut exsiliō pūnitī sunt.

#### 7. CAPTURE OF ROME BY THE GAULS, 390 B.C.

Posteā Galli Senonēs ad urbem vērunt, Rōmānōs apud flūmen Alliam vicērunt, urbem etiam occupāvērunt. Iam nihil

praeter Capitōlium dēfendī potuit. Et iam praesidium famē labōrābat, et in eō erant, ut pācem ā Gallis aurō emerent, cum Camillus cum manū militum superveniēns hostēs māgnō proeliō superāvit.

#### 8. WAR WITH THE SAMNITES, 321 B.C.

T. Veturius et Spurius Postumius cōsulēs bellum adversum Samnītēs gerēbant. Hī ā Pontiō Telesinō, duce hostium, in insidiās inductī sunt. Nam ad Furculās Caudinās Rōmānōs pellexit in angustias, unde sēsē expedire nōn poterant. Ibi Pontius patrem suum Herennium rogāvit, quid faciendum putāret. Ille respondit, aut omnēs occīdendōs esse, ut Rōmānōrum virēs frangerentur, aut omnēs dīmittendōs, ut beneficiō obligārentur. Pontius utrumque cōsiliū improbāvit, omnēsque sub iugum mīsīt. Samnītēs dēnique post bellum ūndēquīnquāgintā annōrum superātī sunt.

#### 9. FIRST PUNIC WAR, 264-241 B.C.

Annō quadringentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō post urbem conditam Rōmānōrum exercitūs in Siciliam trāiēcērunt, rēgemque Syracūsarum Hierōnem, Poenōsque, quī multās urbēs in eā insulā occupāverant, superāverunt. Quīntō annō hūius bellī, quod contrā Poenōs gerēbātur, primum Rōmānī, C. Duiliō et Cn. Cornēliō Asinā cōsulibus, in marī dimicāverunt. Duilius Carthāginiēnsēs vicit, trīgintā nāvēs occupāvit, quattuordecim mersit, septem mīlia hostium cēpit, tria mīlia occīdit. Nulla victōria Rōmānīs grātiōr fuit. Duiliō concessum est, ut cum ā cēnā redīret, puerī fūnālia ferentēs et tibīcen eum comitārentur.

Tandem, C. Lutātiō Catulō, A. Postumiō cōsulibus, annō bellī Pūnicī vicēsīmō tertiō māgnū proelium nāvāle commissum est contrā Lilybaeum, prōmunturium Siciliae. In eō proeliō septuāgintā trēs Carthāginiēnsium nāvēs captae, centum

vīgintī quīnque dēmersae, trīgintā duo milia hostium capta, tredecim milia occīsa sunt. Statim Carthāginiēnsēs pācem petiērunt, eisque pāx tribūta est.

#### 10. SECOND PUNIC WAR, 218-201 B.C.

Bellum Pūnicum renovātum est per Hannibalem, Carthāginiēnsium ducem, quem pater Hamilcar novem annōs nātum ārīs admōverat, ut odium perenne in Rōmānōs iūrāret. Hīc annum agēns vicēsimum aetātis Saguntum, Hispāniae urbem, Rōmānīs amicam, oppūgnāre aggressus est. Huic Rōmānī per lēgātōs dēnūntiāvērunt, ut bellō abstinēret. Quī cum lēgātōs admittere nōllet, Rōmānī Carthāginem mīsērunt, ut mandārētur Hannibalī, nē bellum contrā sociōs populī Rōmānī gereret. Dūra respōnsa ā Carthāginiēnsibus reddita sunt. Saguntīnīs intereā famē victīs, Rōmānī Carthāginiēnsibus bellum indixērunt.

Hannibal, frātre Hasdrubale in Hispāniā relīctō, Pŷrēnaeum et Alpēs trānsiit. Trāditur in Ītaliā octōgintā milia peditum, vīgintī milia equitum, septem et trīgintā elephantōs abdūxisse. Intereā multī Ligurēs et Gallī cum Hannibale sē coniūnxērunt. Prīmus eī occurrit P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, quī, proeliō ad Tīcinum commissō, superātus est et vulnere acceptō in castra rediit. Tum Semprōnius Gracchus cōflīxit apud Trebiam amnem. Is quoque vincitur. Multī populī sē Hannibalī dēdidērunt. Inde in Etrūriam prōgressus, Flāminium cōsulem ad Trasumēnum lacum superat. Ipse Flāminius interēptus, Rōmānōrum vīgintī quīnque milia caesa sunt.

#### 11. HANNIBAL'S VICTORY AT CANNAE, 216 B.C.

Quīngentēsīmō tricēsīmō octāvō annō post urbem cōditam L. Aemilius Paulus et C. Terentius Varrō contrā Hannibalem mittuntur. Quamquam intellēctum erat, Hannibalem nōn aliter

vincī posse quam morā, Varrō tamen morae impatiēns apud vīcum, quī Cannae appellātur, in Āpūliā pūgnāvit; ambō cōsulēs victī, Paulus interēptus est. In eā pūgnā cōsulārēs aut praetōrii vīginti, senātōrēs trīgintā captī aut occīsī sunt; mīlitum quadrāgintā mīlia, equitum tria mīlia et quīngentī periērunt. In hīs tantīs malīs nēmō tamen pācis mentiōnem fēcit. Servī, quod numquam antea factum erat, manūmissī et mīlītēs factī sunt.

#### 12. BATTLE OF ZAMA, 202 B.C.

Annō decimō quārtō postquam in Ītaliā Hannibal vēnerat, Scīpiō cōsul creatus et in Āfricā missus est. Ibi contrā Hannōnem, ducem Carthāginiēnsium, prōsperē pūgnat tōtumque ēius exercitum dēlet. Secundō proeliō ūndecim mīlia hominum occīdit, et castra cēpit cum quattuor mīlibus et quīngentis mīlitibus. Syphācem, Numidiaē rēgem, quī sē cum Poenīs coniūnxerat, cēpit, eumque cum nōbilissimis Numidis et infīnītis spoliīs Rōmam mīsīt. Quā rē audītā, omnis ferē Ītalia Hannibalem dēserit. Ipse ā Carthāginiēnsibus in Āfricā redire iubētur. Ita annō decimō septimō Ītalia ab Hannibale liberāta est.

Post plūrēs pūgnās et pācem frūstrā temptātam, pūgna apud Zamā committitur, in quā perītissimī ducēs cōpiās suās ad bellum ēducēbant. Scīpiō victor recēdit; Hannibal cum paucīs equitibus ēvādit. Post hōc proelium pāx cum Carthāginiēnsibus facta est. Scīpiō, cum Rōmam rediisset, ingentī glōriā triumphāvit atque Āfricānus appellātus est.

#### 13. THIRD PUNIC WAR, 149-146 B.C.

Tertium deinde bellum contrā Carthāginem susceptum est annō quīnquāgēsīmō tertio postquam secundum bellum Pūnicum trānsāctum erat. L. Mārcius Cēnsōrīnus et M. Mānlius cōsulēs in Āfricā trāiēcērunt et Carthāginem oppūgnāvērunt.

Multa ibi praeclārē gesta sunt ā Scīpiōne, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōte, quī tribūnus in Āfricā militābat. Cum iam māgnū esset Scīpiōnis nōmen, tertio annō postquam Rōmānī in Āfricā trāiēcērant cōsul est creātus et contrā Carthāginem missus. Is hanc urbem ā cīvibus ācerrimē dēfēnsam cēpit atque diruit. Ita Carthāgō septingentēsimo annō postquam condita erat dēlēta est. Scīpiō nōmen *Āfricānus minor* accēpit.

#### 14. DEFEAT OF THE CIMBRI AND TEUTONS, 102-101 B.C.

Dum bellum in Numidiā contrā Iugurtham geritur, Cimbri et Teutonī aliaeque Germānōrum et Gallōrum gentēs, fūsō exercitū populī Rōmānī, Ītalīae minābantur. Ingēns fuit Rōmae timor, nē iterum Galli urbem occupārent. Ergō Marius cōsul creātus, eīque bellum contrā Cimbrōs et Teutonōs dēcrētum est; bellōque prōductō, tertius eī et quārtus cōsulātus dēlātus est. In duōbus proeliis cum Cimbris ducenta mīlia hostium cecīdit, octōgintā mīlia eōrumque ducem cēpit, propter quod meritum absēns quīntum cōsul creātus est. Intereā Cimbri et Teutonī, quōrum multitudō etiam nunc infīnīta erat, in Ītaliā trāsiērunt. Iterum ā C. Mariō et Q. Catulō contrā eōs ad Vērōnam dīmīcātum est. Centum et quadrāgintā mīlia aut in pūgnā aut in fugā caesa sunt, sexāgintā mīlia capta. Tria et trīgintā Cimbris sīgna dētrācta sunt.

#### 15. MARIUS AND SULLA, 88-83 B.C.

Annō urbis conditae sexcentēsimo sextō prīmum Rōmae bellum cīvile exortum est; eōdem annō etiam Mithridāticum. Causam bellī cīvilis C. Marius dedit. Nam cum Sullae bellum adversus Mithridātem, rēgem Pontī, dēcrētum esset, Marius eī hunc honōrem ēripere cōnātus est. Sed Sulla, quī cum legiōnibus suis in Ītaliā morābātur, cum exercitū Rōmam vēnit, et



aliōs adversāriōs interfēcit, aliōs fugāvit. Tum, rēbus Rōmae compositis, in Asiam profectus est, plūribusque proeliis Mithridātem coēgit pācem ā Rōmānīs petere, et Asiam, in quam invāserat, relinquere.

Sed dum Sulla in Graeciā et Asiā Mithridātem vincit, Marius, quī fugātus erat, et Cornēlius Cinna, ūnus ex cōsulibus, bellum in Ītaliā renovārunt, et ingressi Rōmam nōbilissimōs ex senātū et cōsulārēs virōs interfēcērunt; multōs prōscripsērunt; ipsiūs Sullae domō ēversā, filiōs et uxōrem fugere coēgērunt. Ūniversus reliquus senātus ex urbe fugiēns ad Sullam in Graeciam vēnit, ōrāns ut patriae subvenīret. Sulla in Ītaliā trāiēcit, hostium exercitūs vīcit, mox etiam urbem ingressus est, quam caede et sanguine cīvium complēvit. Quattuor mīlia inermium, quī sē dēdiderant, interficī iussit; duo mīlia equitum et senātorum prōscripsit. Tum dē Mithridāte triumphāvit.

#### 16. SPARTACUS AND THE GLADIATORS, 73-71 B.C.

Annō urbis sexcentēsīmō octōgēsīmō prīmō novum in Ītaliā bellum commōtum est. Septuāgintā enim quattuor gladiātōrēs, duce Spartacō, ē lūdō gladiātōriō, quī Capuae erat, effūgērunt, et per Ītaliā vagantēs bellum mōvērunt. Nam exercitum sexāgintā ferē mīlium armātōrum contrāxērunt, multōsque ducēs et duōs cōsulēs Rōmānōs vīcērunt. Ipsi ā M. Liciniō Crassō prōcōnsule in Āpūliā victi sunt, et, post multās calamitatēs Ītaliae, tertiō annō hōc bellum cōnfectum est.

#### 17. CAESAR AND POMPEY, 49-48 B.C.

Caesar, victor ē Galliā rediēns, absēns alterum cōsulātum poscere coepit; quem cum aliquī sine dubitātiōne dēferrent, Pompēius aliq̄ue contrā dīxērunt, et Caesar iussus est dīmissis exercitibus in urbem redire. Propter hanc iniūriam ab Ariminō, ubi milītēs coāctōs habēbat, infestō exercitū Rōmam



contendit. Cōsulēs cum Pompēiō senātusque omnis atque ūniversa nōbilitās ex urbe fūgit et in Graeciam trāsiit; et dum senātus bellum contrā Caesarem parat, hīc vacuam urbem ingressus dictātōrem sē fēcit.

Inde Hispāniam petiit ibique Pompēi legiōnēs superāvit; tum in Graeciā adversum Pompēium ipsum dīmīcāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est et fugātus; ēvāsīt tamen, quia, nocte intercēdente, Pompēius sequī nōluit. Deinde in Thessaliā apud Pharsālum, ingentibus utrimque cōpiīs commissīs, dīmīcāvērunt. Numquam antea cōpiae Rōmānae māiōrēs neque meliōribus ducibus convēnerant. Pūgnātum est ingentī contentiōne, victusque ad extrēmum Pompēius, et castra ēius dīrepta sunt. Ipse fugātus Alexandriā petiit, ut ā rēge Aegyptī auxilium acciperet. At hīc fortūnam magis quam amicitiam secūtus, Pompēium occīdit, caput ēius ad Caesarem mīsit. Quō cōspectō, Caesar etiam lacrimās fūdisse dīcitur.

#### 18. ASSASSINATION OF CAESAR, 44 B.C.

Cum Caesar Īdibus Mārtiīs in senātum vēnisset, coniūrātī eum assidentem circumstetērunt, et statim ūnus, quasi aliquid rogātūrus, propius accessit renuentique togam ab utrōque umerō apprehendit. Deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vīs est," Casca, ūnus ē coniūrātis, paulō infrā iugulum vulnerāvit. Caesar Cascae brachium arreptum graphiō trāiēcīt, cōnātusque prōsilire aliud vulnus accēpit. Cum M. Brūtum, quem fili locō habēbat, in sē irruentem vīdisset, dīxit: "Tū quoque, mī fili!" Deinde ubi animadvertit sē strictīs pugiōnibus undique petī, togā caput obvolvīt atque ita tribus et vīgintī vulneribus cōfossus est.

#### 19. DEATH OF CICERO, 43 B.C.

Antōnius, societāte cum Octāviānō initā, Cicerōnem orātōrem, iam diū sibi inimicum, prōscripsit. Quā rē audītā, Cicerō in

villam, quae ā mari proximē aberat, fūgit indeque nāvem cōnscendit, ut in Macedoniam trānsīret. Cum vērō ventī adversī eum aliquotiēns rettulissent, et ipse iactātiōnem maris patī nōn posset, regressus ad villam, “Moriar,” inquit, “in patriā saepe servātā.” Percussōribus adventantibus, ēius servī ad dimicandum parātī erant; sed Cicerō lectīcam dēpōnī et eōs quiētōs patī quod sors inīqua cōgeret iussit. Prōminentī ex lectīcā et cervicem immōtam prae bentī caput praecīsum est. Manūs quoque abscīsaē sunt; caput ad Antōnium relātum est ēiusque iussū cum dextrā manū in rōstrīs positum.

20. BATTLE OF ACTIUM, 31 B.C.

Antōnius Cleopātram, rēgīnam Aegyptī, uxōrem dūxit. Ab hāc incitātus ingēns bellum commōvit, quod Cleopātra Rōmae rēgnāre cuperet. Ab Octāviānō victus est nāvālī pūgnā apud Actium, quī locus in Ēpīrō est. Hinc in Aegyptum fūgit, et, dēspērātīs rēbus, cum omnēs ad Octāviānum trānsīrent, sē ipse interēmit. Cleopātra aspidem sibi admōvit ēiusque venēnō periit. Ita bellō cōfectō Octāviānus Rōmam rediit. Māximī honōrēs eī ā senātū dēlātī sunt. Ex eō tempore summam potestātem per quadrāgintā quattuor annōs sōlus obtinuit.

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

## THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS, 58 B.C.

### BOOK I, CHAPTERS I–XII

I. Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

II. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, rēgnī

cupiditate inductus coniurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent; perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci naturam Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimum atque altissimum, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Iura altissimum, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia, lacum Lemannum et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quam ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patebant.

III. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare, iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coemere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt; in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri Diviciaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factum esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii

possent ; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmis-simōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potirī posse spērant.

IV. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt ; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit ; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est ; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quī ipse sibi mortem cōscīverit.

V. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent ; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suis vicisque exūstīs, ūnā cum eis proficīcantur ; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trāsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

VI. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent : ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur ; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent ; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō

facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.

VII. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrū; sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

VIII. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum



ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum XVIII mūrum in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibītūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitudō flūminis erat, nōnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

IX. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduū mittunt, ut eō dēprecātore ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et cupiditate rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

X. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futurum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eas causās eī mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefecit; ipse in Italiam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant,



ex hibernis ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliā per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturigēs locīs superiōribus occupātis itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

XI. Helvētiī iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdēm tempore, quō Aeduī, Ambarrī, necessārii et cōsanguinei Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et dēmōstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsumptis in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

XII. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum

concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars cīvītātis Helvētiaē insīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.



# NOTES ON SELECTIONS FROM ROMAN HISTORY

*References in ( ) are to the old edition.*

## 1

**Hōrum** : § 346, *a*, 2 ; (§ 216, *a*, 2). — **minor nātū** : *the younger*; for case of **nātū**, see § 418 ; (§ 253). — **vellet** : § 574 ; (§ 334). — **bona** : *the property*. — **reliquisset** : § 580 ; (§ 336, 2) ; this is a subord. clause of the indirect question preceding. — **praetulit** : from **praeferō**.

**possidēret** : §§ 530, 531 ; (§ 317). — **filiam, virginem** : two accusatives, § 393 ; (§ 239, 1, *a*). The Vestal virgins were priestesses of Vesta, goddess of the hearth. They attended the fire which was kept perpetually burning in the temple of Vesta. — **virō** : dat., § 368, 3 ; (§ 227 *e*, 3). — **nūbere** : subject of **licet**, § 454 ; (§ 270 *b*). — **Mārte** : § 403 ; (§ 244). — **peperit** : from **pariō**. — **comperisset** : § 546 ; (§ 325). — **autem** : postpositive conj., i.e. it never stands at the *beginning* of a clause. — **abici** : pres. infin. pass., § 563 *a* ; (§ 271 *b*).

**essent positī** : pluperf. subj., § 546 ; (§ 325). — **in siccō** : *on dry land*; adj. used as noun. — **ūberibus suis aluit** : *suckled*. — **Quod** : *this*; for this use of rel. pron., see § 308 *f*; (§ 201 *e*). — **sustulit** : from **tollō**. — **nūtriendōs** : *to be nursed, brought up*.

**adolēvissent** : from **adolēscō**. — **avus** : Numitor. — **fuisset** : § 574 ; (§ 334). — **Rōmam** : pred. acc., § 393 ; (§ 239, 1, *a*). — **trānsilit** : observe *present* tense after **dum** ; § 556 ; (§ 328 *a*).

## 2

**Quō ēlāpsō** : abl. abs. Translate by clause, *When this*, etc. — **Curibus** : loc. case, § 427, 3 ; (§ 258 *c* 2). — **oppidō** : § 282 *d*; (§ 184 *c*). — **agrō** : here *territory, country*. — **rēx** : pred. nom. — **quidem** : postpositive. — **cīvitātī** : § 370 ; (§ 228). — **populī** : gen. sing. — **alendum** : *to be maintained*. — **faceret** : subord. clause in ind. disc., § 580 ; (§ 336, 2). — **nymphae Egeriae monitū** : *on the advice of*

*the nymph Egeria.* — *facere*: § 580; (§ 336, 2). Why *present* tense? — *Morbō*: abl. cause, § 404; (§ 245). — *sepultus est*: from *sepeliō*.

## 3

*genitus*: from *gignō*. — *fēminā*: § 403 *a*, note 1; (§ 244 *a*, remark). — *prōdigiō*: § 404; (§ 245). — *eī*: § 366; (§ 225). — *portendī*: pres. infin. pass., § 580; (§ 336, 2). — *coniugī*: § 367; (§ 227). — *ut . . . educāret*: *to bring him up*, etc., lit. *that he should*, etc.

*accēpisse, petere*: § 580; (§ 336, 2). Notice change in tense. — *convalesset*: for subj. after *dum*, see § 553; (§ 328). — *Serviō Tulliō*: § 367; (§ 227). — *urbī*: § 370; (§ 228). — *capitum*: part. gen., § 346, *a*, 2; (§ 216, *a*, 2).

## 4

*mōribus*: *by his character*; § 404; (§ 245). — *bellō*: § 418; (§ 253). — *strēnuus*: agrees with the understood subject of *vīcit*. — *Iovis*: gen. of *Iuppiter*. — *oppūgnat*: § 556; (§ 328 *a*). — *Lucrētiæ*: dat., § 366; (§ 225). — *vim fēcisset*: *had done violence*. — *haec*: *she*. — *obtestāta est*: § 543; (§ 324). — *ut ulciscerentur*: *to avenge*; § 563; (§ 331).

*L.* = *Lūcius*. — *in*: *for*. — *eī*: § 376; (§ 235). — *quoque*: postpositive; it never stands first. — *rēgnātum est*: used impersonally; lit. *it was reigned*. — *annōs*: § 423, 2; (§ 256, 2).

## 5

*coepēre*: = *coepērunt*. — *prō*: *instead of*. — *creārī*: § 456; (§ 271). — *esset*: for subj., see § 593; (§ 342). — *coercēret*: §§ 530, 531; (§ 317). — *insolentiōrēs*: pred. nom. — *redderentur*: clause of purpose or result? — *annō*: § 423, 1; (§ 256, 1). — *expulsīs rēgibus*: how should this abl. abs. be rendered in good English? — *libertātis*: § 348; (§ 217). — *Collātinō*: dat., § 381; (§ 229). — *paulō*: § 494; (§ 250). — *post*: here an adverb. — *Placuerat*: *they had determined*, lit. *it had pleased*. What is the subject of this impers. verb? See § 563, *d*; (§ 331, *d*). — *enim*: postpositive, like *autem*, *quoque*, etc. — *quis*: indef. pronoun. Why used here? See § 310 *a*; (§ 105 *d*).

## 6

*alterō* : *second*. — *ab urbe conditā* : *from the founding of the city*, lit. *from the city (having been) founded* ; § 497 ; (§ 292 *a*). Rome was founded in 753 B.C. — *cīvitātī* : § 376 ; (§ 235). — *scrīberent* : rel. clause of purpose ; translate, *to write*. — *bene* : compare this adverb. — *secundō* : supply *annō*. — *eōrum* : what kind of a gen. ? — *Sublāta est* : from *tollō*.

## 7

*dēfendī* : § 456 ; (§ 271). — *famē* : what kind of an abl. ? — *in eō erant ut . . . emerent* : *were on the point of buying* ; § 571 *c* ; (§ 332 *f*). — *aurō* : § 416 ; (§ 252). — *proeliō* : abl. means. — *superāvit* : for indic., see § 546 *a* ; (§ 325, *b*).

## 8

*T.* = *Titus*. — *ad Furculās Caudīnās* : *near the Caudine Forks*. — *expedīre* : *extricate*. — *faciendum* : supply *esse* ; infin. in ind. disc., with subject acc. *quid*. — *putāret* : § 574 ; (§ 334). — *aut . . . aut* : *either . . . or*. — *vīrēs* : pl. of *vīs*. — *dīmittendōs* : supply *esse*. — *sub iugum mīsit* : this was a sign of absolute submission. — *annōrum* : gen. measure, § 345 *b* ; (§ 215 *b*).

## 9

*post urbem conditam* : see note on *ab urbe conditā*, under 6. — *C. Duiliō . . . cōsulibus* : abl. abs., § 419, *a* ; (§ 255, *a*) ; translate, *in the consulship of*, etc. — *C.* = *Gāiō* ; *Cn.* = *Gnaeō*. — *Rōmānīs* : § 384 ; (§ 234 *a*). — *concessum est* : the subject of this verb is the clause *ut . . . comitārentur*.

*captae, dēmersae, capta* : supply *sunt*. — *centum vīgintī quīnque* : i.e. *nāvēs*.

## 10

*novem annōs nātum* : *when nine years old*. — *annōs* : § 423 ; (§ 256). — *nātum* : perf. participle, agreeing with *quem*. — *ārīs* : § 370 ; (§ 228). — *annum agēns vīcēsimum aetātis* : lit. *spending the twentieth year of his age*, i.e. *when twenty years of age*. —

**Rōmānīs** : § 384; (§ 234 *a*). — **Quī cum** : *when he*; see § 308 *f*; (§ 201 *e*). — **Carthāginem** : for omission of prep., see § 427, 2; (§ 258 *b*). — **mandārētur** : used impersonally. — **Hannibalī** : § 367; (§ 227). — **nē . . . gereret** : substantive clause, purpose or result? — **Saguntīnīs . . . victīs** : how best translated? — **Carthāginiēnsibus** : § 370; (§ 228). — **Trāditur** : *he is said*. — **eī** : § 370; (§ 228). — **ad** : *near*. — **vulnere acceptō** : what construction is this? — **vincitur, superat** : historical pres., § 469; (§ 276 *d*). — **interēptus** : supply *est*.

## 11

**post urbem conditam** : *after the founding of the city*. — **mittuntur** : why present? — **intellēctum erat** : what mood regularly follows *quamquam*? See § 527, *d*; (§ 313, *e*). — **Hannibalem . . . morā** : *that H. could not be beaten otherwise than by delay*. — **morae** : gen. case, § 347, *c*; (§ 218, *b*). — **Cannae** : pred. nom., § 283; (§ 185). — **victī** : supply *sunt*. — **pācis** : § 348; (§ 217). — **quod** : rel. pron.; its antecedent is the clause **servī . . . factī sunt**.

## 12

**vēnerat** : § 543, *a*; (§ 324, *a*). — **ēius** : why *ēius* and not *suum*? — **Rōmam** : § 427, 2; (§ 258 *b*). — **Quā rē audītā** : lit. *which thing having been heard*; render this in good English. — **redīre** : § 456; (§ 271). — **ab Hannibale** : *from H.*

**et pācem frūstrā temptātā** : translate by clause, *and after peace had been tried in vain*. — **rediisset** : § 546; (§ 325). — **glōriā** : § 412; (§ 248).

## 13

**annō** : § 423, 1; (§ 256, 1). — **Multa** : used substantively. — **tribūnus** : *as a tribune*. — **dēfēnsam** : translate this participle by a clause; § 496; (§ 292). — **minor** : *the younger*.

## 14

**geritur** : translate by imperf.; § 556; (§ 328 *a*). — **exercitū** : § 419; (§ 255). — **Ītalīae** : § 367; (§ 227). — **nē . . . occupārent** : for *affirmative* clause introduced by *nē*, see § 564; (§ 331, *f*). — **creātus** :



est understood. — *eī*: dat. ind. obj. — *dēcrētum est*: from what verb? — *cecīdit*: from *caedō*. — *absēns*: *though absent*; modifies subject of *creātus est*. — *quīntum*: adv., *for the fifth time*. — *dīmīcātum est*: *a battle was fought*, lit. *it was fought* (impers.). — *Cimbrīs*: *from the Cimbri*; for dat., see § 381; (§ 229).

## 15

*annō*: abl. time, § 423, 1; (§ 256, 1). — *Rōmae*: loc. case, § 427, 3; (§ 258 c, 2). — *Mithridāticum*: supply *bellum exortum est*. — *Sullae*: *to Sulla*. — *eī*: *from him*; § 381; (§ 229). — *Rōmam*: *to Rome*; why no prep.? — *rēbus*: § 419; (§ 255). — *petere, relinquere*: obj. infin. with subject acc. *Mithridātem*, depending on *coēgit*.

*vincit*: the pres. tense is regularly used after *dum*, meaning *while*. — *ex cōsulibus*: instead of part. gen.; § 346 c; (§ 216 c). — *renovārunt*: = *renovāvērunt*. — *prōscripsērunt*: those who were proscribed lost their lives and their property was confiscated. — *ēversā*: observe fem. gender, agreeing with *domō*; for abl., see § 419; (§ 255). — *fugere*: see note above on *petere, relinquere*. — *patriae*: dat. case. — *subvenīret*: note *secondary* sequence; for, subj., see § 563; (§ 331). — *caede, sanguine*: abl. means, § 409 a; (§ 248 c 2). — *inermium*: used as noun; for gen., see § 346, a, 2; (§ 216, a, 2). — *interfici*: the infin. with subject acc. is regularly used with *iubeō*. — *equitum*: *knights*, members of the equestrian order. — *dē Mithridāte*: *over M.*

## 16

*enim*: for position, see note on *enim*, under 5. — *duce Spartacō*: *under the leadership of Spartacus*, lit. *Spartacus (being) leader*. — *mōvērunt*: *stirred up*. — *mīlium*: gen. measure, § 345 b; (§ 215 b). — *armātōrum*: *armed men*; what kind of a gen.?

## 17

*quem*: *this*; rel. pron. at beginning of sentence equivalent to demonstrative; § 308 f; (§ 201 e). — *dēferrent*: § 546; (§ 325). — *contrā dīxērunt*: *objected*. — *coāctōs*: *brought together, collected*. —

exercitū: § 419, *a*; (§ 255, *a*). — hīc: *he*. — dictātōrem, sē: two accusatives, § 393; (§ 239, 1, *a*).

nocte: § 419; (§ 255). — sequī: § 456; (§ 271). — nōluit: § 540; (§ 321). — Pharsālum: why fem.? — meliōribus ducibus: *under better leaders*. What construction? — Pūgnātum est: used impersonally. — victus: supply est. — ad extrēmum: *at last*. — ut . . . acciperet: purpose or result? — rēge Aegyptī: Ptolemy. — secūtus: perf. participle modifying hīc. — Quō cōspectō: *when he saw it*; abl. abs. — fūdisse: § 582; (§ 330, *a*, 1). — dīcitur: note personal construction.

## 18

Idibus Mārtiis: the 15th of March. — assidentem: pres. participle, *as he took his seat*. — rogātūrus: *to ask*; fut. participle expressing purpose, § 499, 2; (§ 293 *b*, 2). — renuentī: modifying eī understood; dat. ref., § 376; (§ 235). — clāmāntem: with eum understood, object of vulnerāvit; translate, *as he cried out*. — ē coniūrātis: why not part. gen.? See § 346 *c*; (§ 216 *c*). — paulō: abl. degree of difference. — arreptum . . . trāiēcit: *seized and pierced*, lit. *pierced the arm (having been) seized*. — cōnātus: perf. participle. — fili locō: *as a son, in the place of a son*. — in sē irruentem: *rushing upon him*. — quoque: postpositive. — mī: for form, see § 110 *a* note; (§ 81 *a* note). — fili: § 49 *c*; (§ 40 *c*). — strictis pugiōnibus: *with drawn daggers*. — sē petī: *that he was attacked*; ind. disc. depending on animadvertit. — togā: abl. means. The *toga* was the outer garment, usually of white wool, worn by Roman citizens.

## 19

Octāviānō: afterwards the emperor Augustus. — initā: from ineō, *form*. — sibi: § 384; (§ 234 *a*). — inimicum: here an adjective. — prōscripsit: for meaning, see note on prōscripsērunt, under 15. — Quā rē auditā: lit. *which thing having been heard*; render this in good English. — quae . . . aberat: *which was very near the sea*. — fūgit: is this pres. or perf.? — vērō: postpositive. — rettulissent: § 546; (§ 325). — inquit; always follows one or more words of the

quotation. — *servātā*: translate this participle by rel. clause. — *adventantibus*: pres. participle, here used in abl. abs. — *đimicandum*: § 506; (§ 300). — *đēpōnī, patī*: for infin. with *iubeō*, see § 563 *a*; (§ 330 B, 2). — *quiētōs*: translate as adverb, *calmly*. — *quod*: *what*. — *cōgeret*: supply *eōs patī*; for subj., see § 535; (§ 320). — *Prōminentī, praebentī*: understand *eī*; for dat., see § 376; (§ 235). — *iussū*: § 404; (§ 245). — *rōstrīs*: the *rostra*, or speaker's stand in the Roman Forum.

## 20

*uxōrem dūxit*: *married*, lit. *led (as) wife*. — *Ab hāc*: *by her*. — *quod . . . cuperet*: whose reason is this? See § 540; (§ 321). — *pūgnā*: what kind of an abl.? — *cum . . . trānsīrent*: causal, § 549; (§ 326). — *sē ipse interēmit*: lit. *he himself killed himself*. — *sibi*: § 370; (§ 228). — *Rōmam*: why no prep.? — *eī*: dat. ind. obj.

## L OF C.

## NOTES ON CAESAR

### BOOK I — CHAPTERS I—XII

CHAPTER I. *quārum*: § 346, *a*, 2; (§ 216, *a*, 2). — *aliā, tertiam*: supply *partem*. — *ipsōrum linguā*: *in their own language*. — *Celtae, Gallī*: pred. nom. with *appellantur*. — *nostrā*: supply *linguā*. — *linguā, institūtis, lēgibus*: abl. spec., § 418; (§ 253). — *inter sē*: *from one another*. — *minimē*: with *saepe*. — *mercātōrēs*: nom. case, subject of *commeant*. — *ad effēminandōs animōs*: gerundive with *ad*, denoting purpose, § 506; (§ 300). — *Germanīs*: for dat., see § 384; (§ 234 *a*). — *quibuscum*: § 150 *d*; (§ 104 *e*). — *Quā dē causā*: (*and*) *for this reason*. — *virtūte*: § 418; (§ 253). — *contendunt*: for indic. with *quod*, see § 540; (§ 321). — *suīs, eōrum*; refer to whom? — *quam*: object of *obtinēre*. — *Gallōs obtinēre*: subject of *dictum est*, which is used impersonally. — *ab*: *on the side of*. — *orientem sōlem*: i.e. the east. — *occāsum sōlis*: i.e. the west.

CHAPTER II. *dītissimus*: sup. of *dīves*. — *Messālā . . . cōsuli-bus*: *in the consulship of*, etc.; abl. abs., § 419, *a*; (§ 255, *a*). This was the year 61 B.C. — *rēgnī*: obj. gen., § 348; (§ 217). — *cīvitatī*: § 367; (§ 227). — *ut . . . exīrent*: *to go out*; § 563; (§ 331). — *per-facile esse*: (*saying*) *that it was very easy*; ind. disc. — *omnibus*: dat. case, § 370; (§ 228). — *praestārent*: subj. with *cum* causal, § 549; (§ 326). — *imperīō*: for abl., see § 410; (§ 249). — *potīrī*: infin., subject of *esse*. — *hōc*: abl. cause, § 404; (§ 245). — *facilius*: compare this adverb. — *continentur*: why indic.? — *ūnā ex parte*: *on one side*. — *tertiā*: supply *ex parte*. — *nostram*: i.e. the Roman. — *rēbus*: § 404; (§ 245). — *fiēbat*: impersonal; what is the subject? — *vagārentur, possent*: § 569, 2; (§ 332 *a*, 2). — *fīnitimīs*: for dat., see § 370; (§ 228). — *bellandī*: gerund; for gen., see § 349, *a*; (§ 218, *a*). — *Prō*: *considering*. — *autem*: postpositive. — *sē habēre*:

infin. in ind. disc., dep. on arbitrābantur. — *mīlia*: § 425; (§ 257). — *CCXL*: = *ducenta* (et) *quadrāgintā*. — *CLXXX*: = *centum* (et) *octōgintā*.

CHAPTER III. *pertinērent*: for subj., see § 592; (§ 341). — *comparāre*, *coēmere*, *facere*, *cōfirmāre*: § 456; (§ 271). — *quam māximum*: *as large as possible*; for this use of *quam*, see § 291 *c*; (§ 93 *b*). — *Ad eās rēs cōficiendās*: for this construction of gerundive, see § 506; (§ 300). — *dūxērunt*: *they considered*. — *dēligitur*: historical pres., § 469; (§ 276 *d*). — *sibi*: § 370; (§ 228). — *annōs*: why acc.? — *ut . . . occupāret*: *to seize*. — *acceptus*: *acceptable*. — *idem*: *the same thing*. — *Perfacile*, etc.: ind. disc. dep. on *probat*. — *factū*: latter supine, § 510; (§ 303). — *obtentūrus esset*: §§ 540, 580; (§§ 321, 336, 2). — *plūrimum*: for acc., see § 390 *c*; (§ 240 *a*). — *possent*: § 558, *a*; (§ 332 *g*, remark). — *conciliātūrum*: supply *esse*. — *rēgnō occupātō*: abl. abs. — *Galliae*: with *potīri*; § 410, *a*; (§ 249, *a*).

CHAPTER IV. *Mōribus*: § 404; (§ 245). — *damnātum*: agrees with *eum* understood, object of *sequi*. — *poenam sequi*: subject of the impers. *oportēbat*. — *dictiōnis*: *for the pleading*. — *eōdem*: adv. — *ut*: *as*; therefore indic. *arbitrantur*. — *cōnscīverit*: § 558; (§ 319 *d*).

CHAPTER V. *nihilō*: § 414; (§ 250). — *ut . . . exeant*: *to go out*; § 568; (§ 332). — *domum*: for omission of prep., see § 427, 2; (§ 258 *b*). — *spē*: § 419; (§ 255). — *ad . . . subeunda*: *to undergo all dangers*; gerundive of purpose, §§ 503, 506; (§§ 296, 300). — *mēnsium*: § 345 *b*; (§ 215 *b*). — *quemque efferre*: regular construction with *iubeō*. — *utī . . . proficiscantur*: how rendered in good English? — *cōnsiliō*: abl. with *ūsi*, § 410; (§ 249). — *ūnā*: adv. — *oppūgnārant*: = *oppūgnāverant*. — *sociōs*: *as allies*. — *sibi*: § 370; (§ 228).

CHAPTER VI. *itineribus*: § 429 *a*; (§ 258 *g*). — *possent*: rel. clause of characteristic, § 535; (§ 320). — *ūnum*: supply *iter*. — *quā*: adv. — *ut . . . possent*: purpose or result? — *alterum*: supply *iter*. — *locīs*: for omission of *in*, see § 429, 1; (§ 258 *f*, 1). — *persuāsūrōs*, *coactūrōs*: supply *esse*; fut. infin. in ind. disc., dep. on *exīstimābant*. — *animō*: abl. quality, § 415; (§ 251). — *ad profectiōnem*: *for their*

*departure.* — *convenient* : § 531, 2; (§ 317, 2). — *quā diē, Is diēs* : observe change in gender of *diēs* ; § 97, *a* ; (§ 73). — *a. d. V Kal. Apr.* : = *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs, the fifth day before the Calends of April* = March 28. For Roman calendar, see § 631; (§ 376). — *Pīsōne . . . cōsulibus* : abl. abs., § 419, *a* ; (§ 255, *a*). The year is 58 B.C.

CHAPTER VII. *nūntiātum esset* : § 546; (§ 325). — *eōs . . . cōnārī* : in apposition with *id.* — *quam mājimīs, quam mājimum* : see note on *quam mājimum*, Chapter III. — *ulteriōrem* : i.e. beyond the Alps. — *Prōvinciae* : § 367; (§ 227). — *rescindī* : § 563 *a* ; (§ 330 B, 2). — *factī sunt* : § 543; (§ 324). — *quī dicerent* : *to say* ; § 531, 2; (§ 317, 2). — *sibi esse in animō* : *that it was their intention* ; for *sibi*, see § 373; (§ 231). — *habērent* : subj., because the reason is that of the Helvetians. — *facere* : infin. subject of *impers. liceat*. — *memoriā* : § 409; (§ 248 *c*). — *L. Cassium . . . missum* : this was in 107 B.C. — *occīsum, pulsum, missum* : supply *esse*. — *sub iugum missum* : this was a sign of absolute submission. — *concēdendum (esse)* : used impersonally. — *animō* : § 415; (§ 251). — *itineris faciendī* : *of marching*. — *convenīrent* : for subj. after *dum*, see § 553; (§ 328). — *diem* : *time*. — *quid* : indef. pron., used here after *sī*. — *ad Id. Apr.* : = *ad Idūs Aprīlēs, about the Ides of April* = April 13. — *reverterentur* : command expressed in ind. disc., § 588; (§ 339).

CHAPTER VIII. *legiōne* : § 409; (§ 248 *c*). — *mīlia* : § 425; (§ 257). — *pedum* : § 345 *b* ; (§ 215 *b*). — *quō* : why used here? See § 531 *a* ; (§ 317 *b*). — *sē invītō* : *against his will*, lit. *he (being) unwilling* ; abl. abs., § 419, *a* ; (§ 255, *a*). — *cōnārentur* : for subj., see § 593; (§ 342). — *vēnit, revertērunt* : § 543; (§ 324). — *mōre, exemplō* : § 404; (§ 245). — *ūllī* : dat. case. — *cōnentur* : subord. clause in ind. disc. — *prohibitūrum (esse)* : supply *sē* as subject acc. — *spē* : § 400; (§ 243). — *nāvibus iūntīs*, etc. : *by joining ships*, etc. — *quā* : adv. — *possent* : § 576 *a* ; (§ 334, *f*). — *cōnātū* : § 400; (§ 243).

CHAPTER IX. *quā* : § 429 *a* ; (§ 258 *g*). — *Sēquanīs invītīs* : render this abl. abs. in good English. — *cum* : causal. — *eō dēprecātōre* :



*through his intercession*; abl. abs. — **plūrimum poterat**: *had very great power*; for adverbial acc. **plūrimum**, see § 390 c; (§ 240 a). — **Helvētiīs**: § 384; (§ 234 a). — **novīs rēbus**: *a revolution*; for dat., see § 368, 3; (§ 227 e, 3). — **quam plūrimās**: *as many as possible*. — **ut . . . patiantur**: object of **impetrat**. — **prohibeant**: negative clause of purpose.

CHAPTER X. **renūntiātūr**: used impersonally; what is the subject? — **Helvētiīs**: § 373; (§ 231). — **fieret**: § 580; (§ 336, 2). — **prōvinciae**: gen. case. — **futūrum** (esse: fut). infin. in ind. disc. — **locīs**: dat. with **finitimōs**, § 384; (§ 234 a). — **habēret**: substantive clause of result, § 569; (§ 332 a). — **mūnitiōnī**: § 370; (§ 228). — **māgnīs itineribus**: *by forced marches*. — **itinere**: § 400; (§ 243). — **hīs pulsīs**: abl. abs. — **pervenit**: historical pres.

CHAPTER XI. **sua**: used substantively. — **possent**: § 549; (§ 326). — **rogātum**: supine, § 509; (§ 302). — **Ita sē**, etc.: (*saying*) *that they had*, etc. — **vāstārī**, **abdūcī**, **expūgnārī**: § 456; (§ 271). — **dēbuerint**: § 537; (§ 319). — **dēpopulātīs**: deponent used passively. — **sibi**: § 373; (§ 231). — **nihil reliquī**: *nothing left*; for **reliquī**, see § 346, a, 1; (§ 216, a, 1). — **exspectandum** (esse): used impersonally. — **sibi**: dat. agent with **exspectandum**, § 374; (§ 232). — **pervenirent**: § 553; (§ 328).

CHAPTER XII. **lēnitāte**: § 412; (§ 248). — **fluat**: § 574; (§ 334). — **possit**: § 537; (§ 319). — **ratibus . . . iūctīs**: *by joining*, etc.; § 419; (§ 255). — **partēs**, **flūmen**: for two accusatives, see § 395; (§ 239 b). — **dē tertiā vigiliā**: *in the third watch*, i.e. between 12 and 3 A.M. — **fugae**: § 362; (§ 225). — **Tigurīnus**: §§ 283, 284; (§ 185). — **Helvētia**: adj. — **domō**: § 427, 1; (§ 258 a). — **memoriā**: § 423, 1; (§ 256, 1). — **interfēcerat**, **miserat**: in 107 B.C. See Chapter VII. — **cāsū**, **cōnsiliō**: § 404; (§ 245). — **pars**: attracted into rel. clause. — **ea**: i.e. **pars**. — **prīnceps**: here adj. — **ēius**: i.e. Caesar's. — **quō Cassium**: supply **interfēcerant**.





# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## A

**A.**, abbreviation for **Aulus**, a Roman first name.

**ā**, **ab**, prep. with **abl.**, *from ; by*.

**abdō**, **ere**, **didī**, **ditum**, *hide*.

**abdūcō**, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**, *lead away*.

**abiciō**, **ere**, **iēcī**, **iectum**, *throw away*.

**abscidō**, **ere**, **cīdī**, **cīsum**, *cut off*.

**absēns**, **entis**, *absent*.

**abstineō**, **ēre**, **uī**, *refrain*.

**absum**, **esse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus**, *be away*.

**Acca**, **ae**, **F.**, *Acca (Larentia)*.

**accēdō**, **ere**, **cessī**, **cessum**, *approach*.

**acceptus**, **a**, **um**, *acceptable*.

**accidō**, **ere**, **cidī**, *happen*.

**accipiō**, **ere**, **cēpī**, **ceptum**, *receive*.

**accurrō**, **ere**, **cucurrī** or **currī**, **cursum**, *run to*.

**accūsō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *blame, accuse*.

**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *sharp ; vigorous ; eager*.

**aciēs**, **ēī**, **F.**, *line of battle ; army (in battle array)*.

**ācritēr**, *vigorously, fiercely*.

**Actium**, **ī**, **N.**, *Actium*, a town of Epirus.

**ad**, prep. with **acc.**, *to, towards ; at, near ; for*.

**addūcō**, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**, *bring ; induce*.

**aditus**, **ūs**, **M.**, *access, way of approach*.

**adiungō**, **ere**, **iūnxī**, **iūctum**, *join to*.

**administrō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *manage*.

**admittō**, **ere**, **mīsī**, **missum**, *admit*.

**admoveō**, **ēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, *move to, bring to*.

**adolēscō**, **ere**, **adolēvī**, **adultum**, *grow up*.

**adorior**, **orīrī**, **ortus sum**, *attack*.

**adsum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, *be present*.

**adventō**, **āre**, *approach*.

**adventus**, **ūs**, **M.**, *approach, arrival*.

**adversārius**, **ī**, **M.**, *enemy*.

**adversum**, prep. with **acc.**, *against*.

**adversus**, prep. with **acc.**, *against*.

**adversus**, **a**, **um**, *unfavorable*.

**aedificium**, **ī**, **N.**, *building*.

**aedificō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *build*.

**Aeduus**, **a**, **um**, *Aeduan* ; **pl.** **Aeduī**, **ōrum**, **M.**, *Aeduans*, a people of Gaul.

**Aegyptus**, **ī**, **F.**, *Egypt*.

**Aemilius**, **ī**, **M.**, *Aemilius*, a Roman name.

**Aenēās**, **ae**, **M.**, *Aeneas*.

aequus, a, um, *level ; favorable.*  
 aestās, ātis, F., *summer.*  
 aetās, ātis, F., *age.*  
 afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum,  
*bring.*  
 afficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *affect, fill.*  
 Āfrica, ae, F., *Africa.*  
 Āfricānus, ī, M., *Africanus*, a  
 name given to Scipio.  
 ager, agrī, M., *field, country.*  
 agger, eris, M., *mound.*  
 aggredior, gredī, gressus sum,  
*attack ; begin.*  
 agmen, minis, N., *army (on the*  
*march), column ; novissimum*  
*agmen, the rear.*  
 agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *do, act ;*  
*discuss ; spend.*  
 Albānī, ōrum, M. pl., *Albans.*  
 Alexandriā, ae, F., *Alexandria.*  
 aliquis, aliquid, *some one, some-*  
*thing ; adj. aliquī, qua, quod,*  
*some.*  
 aliquotiēns, *several times.*  
 aliter, *otherwise.*  
 alius, a, ud (gen. -īus), *other,*  
*another ; aliī . . . aliī, some . . .*  
*others.*  
 Allia, ae, F., *Allia*, a river of Italy.  
 Allobrogēs, um, M. pl., *Allobroges*,  
 a people of Gaul.  
 alloquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *ad-*  
*dress.*  
 alō, ere, aluī, altum, *nourish,*  
*maintain.*  
 Alpēs, ium, F. pl., *Alps.*  
 alter, era, erum (gen. -īus), *the*  
*other ; second ; alter . . . alter,*  
*the one . . . the other.*  
 altitūdō, dinis, F., *height ; depth.*

altus, a, um, *high ; deep.*  
 Ambarri, ōrum, M. pl., *Ambarri*,  
 a people of Gaul.  
 ambō, ae, ō, *both.*  
 amīcitia, ae, F., *friendship.*  
 amīcus, a, um, *friendly.*  
 amīcus, ī, M., *friend.*  
 āmittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *lose.*  
 amnis, is, M., *river.*  
 amplius, adv., *more.*  
 Amūlius, ī, M., *Amulius.*  
 an, or.  
 angustiae, ārum, F. pl., *narrow pass.*  
 angustus, a, um, *narrow.*  
 animadvertō, ere, vertī, versum,  
*observe.*  
 animus, ī, M., *mind ; courage.*  
 annus, ī, M., *year.*  
 annuus, a, um, *lasting a year,*  
*annual.*  
 ante, adv. and prep. with acc., *before.*  
 anteā, *before.*  
 Antōnius, ī, M., *Antonius.*  
 aperiō, īre, uī, pertum, *open.*  
 apertus, a, um, *open, exposed.*  
 appellō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call.*  
 Appius, ī, M., *Appius*, a Roman  
 first name.  
 apprehendō, ere, hendī, hēnsu-  
*seize, take hold of.*  
 Aprīlis, e, *of April.*  
 apud, prep. with acc., *at, near ;*  
*among, with.*  
 Āpūlia, ae, F., *Apulia*, a country of  
 Italy.  
 aqua, ae, F., *water.*  
 Aquilēia, ae, F., *Aquileia*, a town  
 of Italy.  
 Aquītānī, ōrum, M. pl., *Aqui-*  
*tanians*, a people of Gaul.

**Aquītānia**, ae, F., *Aquitania*, a province of Gaul.

**āra**, ae, F., *altar*.

**Arar**, **Araris**, M., *Arar*, now the Saône, a river of Gaul.

**arbitror**, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, *think*.

**Ardea**, ae, F., *Ardea*, a town of Latium.

**Arīminum**, ī, N., *Ariminum*, a town of Italy.

**Ariovistus**, ī, M., *Ariovistus*, king of the Germans.

**arma**, **ōrum**, N. pl., *arms*.

**armō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *arm* ; perf. part. as noun, **armātī**, **ōrum**, M. pl., *armed men*.

**arripō**, ere, **ripuī**, **reptum**, *seize*.

**arx**, **arcis**, F., *citadel*.

**Ascanius**, ī, M., *Ascanius*.

**asciscō**, ere, **scīvī**, **scītum**, *admit, unite*.

**Asia**, ae, F., *Asia*.

**Asina**, ae, M., *Asina*, a Roman name.

**aspis**, **idis**, F., *asp*.

**assīdō**, ere, **sēdī**, *sit down*.

**at**, *but*.

**Athēnae**, **ārum**, F. pl., *Athens*.

**atque**, *and*.

**attingō**, ere, **tigī**, **tāctum**, *reach*.

**auctōritās**, **ātis**, F., *authority, influence*.

**audācia**, ae, F., *boldness*.

**audāx**, **ācis**, *bold, daring*.

**audeō**, **ēre**, **ausus sum**, semi-dep., *dare*.

**audiō**, **īre**, **īvī** (īī), **ītum**, *hear*.

**augeō**, **ēre**, **auxī**, **auctum**, *increase*.

**aurum**, ī, N., *gold*.

**aut**, *or* ; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.

**autem**, postpositive, *but, however ; moreover*.

**auxilium**, ī, N., *aid* ; pl., *auxiliaries*.

**Aventīnus**, ī, M., *Aventine*, one of the seven hills of Rome.

**avus**, ī, M., *grandfather*.

## B

**barbarus**, a, um, *barbarous* ; as noun, **barbarus**, ī, M., *barbarian*.

**Belgae**, **ārum**, M. pl., *Belgians*.

**bellicōsus**, a, um, *warlike*.

**bellō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *wage war*.

**bellum**, ī, N., *war*.

**bene**, *well*.

**beneficium**, ī, N., *kindness*.

**benīgnē**, *kindly*.

**Bibulus**, ī, M., *Bibulus*.

**biennium**, ī, N., *two years*.

**Bōiī**, **ōrum**, M. pl., *Boii*, a people of Gaul.

**bonus**, a, um, *good* ; **bona**, **ōrum**, N. pl., *property*.

**bracchium**, ī, N., *arm*.

**brevis**, e, *short*.

**Britannī**, **ōrum**, M. pl., *Britons*.

**Britannia**, ae, F., *Britain*.

**Brūtus**, ī, M., *Brutus*.

## C

**C.**, abbreviation for **Gāius**, a Roman first name.

**caedēs**, is, F., *slaughter*.

**caedō**, ere, **cecīdī**, **caesum**, *kill*.

**Caesar**, aris, M., *Caesar*.

**calamitās**, **ātis**, F., *disaster*.

**Camillus**, ī, M., *Camillus*.

Cannae, ārum, F. pl., *Cannae*, a town of Apulia.

capīō, ere, cēpī, captum, *take, capture.*

Capitōlium, ī, N., *the Capitol.*

captiva, ae, F., *captive.*

captivus, ī, M., *captive.*

Capua, ae, F., *Capua*, a city of Italy.

caput, itis, N., *head.*

carcer, eris, M., *prison.*

carrus, ī, M., *cart.*

Carthāginiēnsēs, ium, M. pl., *Carthaginians.*

Carthāgō, inis, F., *Carthage.*

cārus, a, um, *dear.*

Casca, ae, M., *Casca.*

Cassius, ī, M., *Cassius.*

castellum, ī, N., *redoubt.*

Casticus, ī, M., *Casticus*, a Sequanian.

castra, ōrum, N. pl., *camp.*

cāsus, ūs, M., *chance.*

Catamantāloedēs, is, M., *Catamantaloedes*, a Sequanian chief.

Catilīna, ae, M., *Catiline.*

Catulus, ī, M., *Catulus.*

Caturīgēs, um, M. pl., *Caturiges*, a people of Gaul.

Caudīnus, a, um, *Caudine*; see *Furculae.*

causa, ae, F., *cause, reason*; case; abl. causā, with gen. preceding, *for the sake of.*

celer, eris, ere, *swift.*

celeritās, ātis, F., *speed.*

celeriter, *quickly.*

Celtae, ārum, M. pl., *Celts.*

cēna, ae, F., *dinner.*

Cēnsōrīnus, ī, M., *Censorinus*, a Roman name.

cēnsus, ūs, M., *census.*

centum, indecl., *hundred.*

centuriō, ōnis, M., *centurion.*

certus, a, um, *certain*; certiōrem faciō, *inform*; pass. certior fiō, *be informed.*

cervīx, īcis, F., *neck.*

cēterī, ae, a, *the other*; *the rest.*

Ceutronēs, um, M. pl., *Ceutrones*, a people of Gaul.

cibāria, ōrum, N. pl., *provisions.*

Cicerō, ōnis, M., *Cicero.*

Cimbri, ōrum, M. pl., *Cimbri*, a people of Germany.

cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *surround.*

Cinna, ae, M., *Cinna.*

circiter, adv. and prep. with acc., *about.*

circum, prep. with acc., *around.*

circumdō, dare, dedī, datum, *surround.*

circumstō, stāre, stetī, *stand around.*

circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *surround.*

citerior, ius, comp. adj., *hither.*

citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

cīvīlis, e, *civil.*

cīvis, is, M., *citizen.*

cīvītās, ātis, F., *state.*

clam, *secretly.*

clāmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *cry out.*

clārus, a, um, *clear, bright*; famous, distinguished.

classis, is, F., *fleet.*

Claudius, ī, M., *Claudius*, a Roman name.

claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, *close.*

Cleopātra, ae, F., *Cleopatra*, queen of Egypt.

cliēns, entis, M., *client*, *retainer*.

Cn., abbreviation for *Gnaeus*, a Roman first name.

coēmō, ere, ēmī, ēptum, *buy up*.

coepī, isse, def., *began*.

coērcēō, ēre, uī, itum, *restrain*, *check*.

cognōmen, minis, N., *surname*.

cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitum, *learn*, *find out*, *know*.

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, *bring together*; *compel*.

cohors, hortis, F., *cohort*.

cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, *encourage*.

Collātīnus, ī, M., *Collatinus*, a Roman name.

collis, is, M., *hill*.

collocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *station*.

colloquium, ī, N., *conference*.

combūrō, ere, ussī, ūstum, *burn up*.

comes, itis, M., *companion*.

comitor, ārī, ātus sum, *attend*.

commeātus, ūs, M., *supplies*.

commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum, *mention*.

commeō, āre, āvī, ātum, *go*, *visit*.

committō, ere, mīsī, missum, *bring together*; *commit*; *proelium committō*, *join battle*.

commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *stir up*; *alarm*.

commūniō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *fortify*.

commūnis, e, *common*, *general*.

comparō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare*; *procure*.

comperiō, īre, perī, pertum, *find out*.

compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *fill*.

complūrēs, ra, pl., *several*, *very many*.

compōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *settle*.

cōnātum, ī, N., *attempt*, *undertaking*.

cōnātus, ūs, M., *attempt*.

concēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *allow*, *grant*.

concīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum, *cut down*, *kill*.

conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum, *gain*, *procure*.

concilium, ī, N., *council*.

concurus, ūs, M., *onset*, *charge*.

condemnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *condemn*, *convict*.

condiciō, ōnis, F., *condition*, *terms*.

condō, ere, didī, ditum, *found*.

condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *bring together*.

cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātum, *bring together*.

cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *accomplish*, *finish*.

cōnfidō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep., *trust*, *have confidence in*.

cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum, *strengthen*, *establish*; *assure*.

cōnflīgō, ere, flīxī, flīctum, *fight*.

cōnfodiō, ere, fōdī, fossum, *stab*.

coniciō, ere, iēcī, iectum, *throw*, *hurl*.

coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join*.

coniūnx (coniux), iugis, M. and F., *husband*; *wife*.

coniūrātī, ōrum, M. pl., *conspirators*.

coniūrātiō, ōnis, F., *conspiracy*.

coniūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *conspire*.

cōnor, āri, ātus sum, *try*.

cōsanguineus, ī, M., *kinsman*.

cōnscendō, ere, scendī, scēsum, *embark*.

cōnsciscō, ere, scīvī, scītum, *decree*; with *sibi mortem*, *commit suicide*.

cōnscrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *enroll*.

cōnsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *dedicate*.

cōnsequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *overtake*; *gain*.

cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessum, *encamp*.

cōnsilium, ī, N., *plan*; *advice*.

cōnsistō, ere, stitī, *halt, take a position*.

cōnspectus, ūs, M., *sight*.

cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectrum, *see*.

cōnstituō, ere, stituī, stitūtum, *place*; *appoint*; *determine*.

cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētum, *become accustomed*; perf. *be accustomed*.

cōnsuētūdō, dinis, F., *custom*.

cōnsul, ulis, M., *consul*.

cōnsulāris, e, *of consular rank*.

cōnsulātus, ūs, M., *consulship*.

cōnsultum, ī, N., *decree*.

cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *destroy*.

contendō, ere, tendī, tentum, *hasten*; *contend*.

contentiō, ōnis, F., *struggle, contest*.

continenter, *continually*.

contineō, ēre, uī, tentum, *keep, restrain*; *bound*.

contrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *against, opposite, contrary to*.

contrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, *collect*.

convalēscō, ere, valuī, *grow strong, recover*.

conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come together*.

convocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call together*.

cōpia, ae, F., *plenty*; pl. cōpiae, ārum, *resources*; *forces*.

Corinthus, ī, F., *Corinth, a city of Greece*.

Cornēlius, ī, M., *Cornelius, a Roman name*.

cornū, ūs, N., *horn*; *wing* (of an army).

corpus, oris, N., *body*.

corrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, *vio- late, ruin*.

cotidiānus, a, um, *daily*.

cotidiē, *daily*.

Crassus, ī, M., *Crassus*.

crēber, bra, brum, *frequent, numerous*.

cremō, āre, āvī, ātum, *burn*.

creō, āre, āvī, ātum, *elect*.

crūdēlis, e, *cruel*.

crūdēliter, *cruelly*.

cultus, ūs, M., *civilization*.

cum, prep. with abl., *with*.

cum, conj., *when*; *since*; *though*.

cupiditās, ātis, F., *desire*.

cupidus, a, um, *desirous, eager*.

cupiō, ere, ivī, itum, *desire*.

cūr, *why?*

Curēs, ium, F. pl., *Cures, a Sabine town*.

cūria, ae, F., *senate-house*.

cūstōs, ōdis, M., *guard*.



## D

damnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *condemn.*  
 dē, prep. with abl., *from ; about,*  
*concerning ; over.*

dea, ae, F., *goddess.*

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum, *ought.*

decem, indecl., *ten.*

decemvirī, ōrum, M. pl., *decem-*  
*virs.*

dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, *de-*  
*cree.*

decimus, a, um, *tenth.*

dēditō, ōnis, F., *surrender.*

dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditum, *sur-*  
*render.*

dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *with-*  
*draw.*

dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēsum, *de-*  
*fend.*

dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *confer,*  
*give.*

dēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectum, *cast*  
*down ; disappoint.*

deinde, *then, afterwards.*

dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *destroy.*

dēliberō, āre, āvī, ātum, *deliber-*  
*ate.*

dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum, *choose.*

dēmergō, ere, mersī, mersum, *sink.*

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *show.*

dēnique, *finally.*

dēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *an-*  
*nounce ; order.*

dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *put*  
*down.*

dēpopulor, ārī, ātus sum, *lay*  
*waste.*

dēpreçātor, ōris, M., *intercessor.*

dēserō, serere, seruī, sertum, *desert.*

dēsiliō, īre, uī, sultum, *leap down.*

dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitum, *cease,*  
*desist.*

dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *despair of.*

dēsum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be*  
*wanting.*

dētrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, *take*  
*away.*

deus, ī, M., *god* (New, § 49 g ;  
 Old, § 40 f).

dexter, tra, trum, *right.*

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, *say, speak ;*  
*plead ; appoint.*

dictātor, ōris, M., *dictator.*

dictiō, ōnis, F., *pleading.*

diēs, ēī, M. (or F.), *day.*

differō, ferre, distulī, dīlātum,  
*differ.*

difficilis, e, *difficult.*

dīgnitās, ātis, F., *dignity, rank.*

dīgnus, a, um, *worthy.*

dīligenter, *diligently, carefully.*

dīligentia, ae, F., *diligence.*

dīmīcō, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight.*

dīmīttō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send ;*  
*dismiss, let go.*

dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptum, *plun-*  
*der.*

dīruō, ere, ruī, rutum, *destroy.*

discēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *de-*  
*part.*

discessus, ūs, M., *departure.*

dispōnō, ere, posuī, positum,  
*station.*

dītissimus, a, um, sup. of dīves,  
*itis, rich.*

diū, *for a long time.*

diūturnitās, ātis, F., *long continu-*  
*ance.*

**Dīviciācus**, ī, M., *Diviciacus*, an Aeduan chief.

**dīvidō**, ere, vīsī, vīsum, *divide*.

**dō**, dare, dedī, datum, *give*.

**dolor**, ōris, M., *pain*; *grief*.

**dominātiō**, ōnis, F., *tyranny*.

**dominus**, ī, M., *master*.

**domō**, āre, uī, itum, *conquer*.

**domus**, ūs, F., *house, home*; loc.

**domī**, at home (New, § 93; Old, § 70 f).

**dubitātiō**, ōnis, F., *doubt, hesitation*.

**dubitō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *doubt*; *hesitate*.

**dubius**, a, um, *doubtful*.

**ducentī**, ae, a, *two hundred*.

**dūcō**, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead*; *consider*.

**Duilius**, ī, M., *Duilius*.

**dum**, *while*; *until*.

**dummodo**, *provided that*.

**Dumnorīx**, rīgis, M., *Dumnorix*, an Aeduan chief.

**duo**, duae, duo, *two*.

**duodecim**, indecl., *twelve*.

**dūrus**, a, um, *harsh, unfavorable*.

**dux**, ducis, M., *leader*.

## E

**ē**, prep. with abl., see **ex**.

**ēducō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring up*.

**ēdūcō**, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead out*.

**effēminō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *weaken*.

**efferō**, ferre, extulī, ēlātum, *bring out, carry out*.

**efficiō**, ere, fēcī, fectum, *bring about*.

**effugiō**, ere, fūgī, *escape*.

**effundō**, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour out*; with reflexive **sē**, *overflow*.

**Ēgeria**, ae, F., *Egeria*, a nymph.  
**ego**, meī, I; pl. nōs, *we*.

**ēgredior**, gredī, gressus sum, *go forth*.

**ēgregius**, a, um, *remarkable*.

**ēlābor**, lābī, lāpsus sum, *elapse*.

**elephantus**, ī, M., *elephant*.

**emō**, emere, ēmī, emptum, *buy*.

**enim**, postpositive, *for*.

**ēnūntiō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *report*.

**eō**, īre, iī (īvī), itum, *go*.

**eō**, adv., *thither, to that place*.

**eōdem**, adv., *to the same place*.

**Ēpīrus**, ī, F., *Epirus*, a province of Greece.

**eques**, itis, M., *horseman*; *knight*; pl., *cavalry*.

**equitātus**, ūs, M., *cavalry*.

**equus**, ī, M., *horse*.

**ergō**, *therefore*.

**ēripiō**, ere, ripuī, reptum, *take away, rescue*.

**et**, *and*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*.

**etiam**, *also*; *even*; *still*; **etiam nunc**, *still*; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also*.

**Ētrūria**, ae, F., *Etruria*, a country of Italy.

**etsī**, *although*.

**ēvādō**, ere, vāsī, vāsum, *escape*.

**ēvertō**, ere, vertī, versum, *overturn, destroy*.

**ex**, ē, prep. with abl., *out of, from*; *of*.

**exemplum**, ī, N., *example, precedent*.

**exeō**, īre, iī, itum, *go out*.

**exerceō**, ēre, uī, itum, *exercise, practice*.

**exercitus**, ūs, M., *army*.

exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum, *think, consider.*

exitium, ī, N., *destruction.*

exior, orīrī, ortus sum, *arise.*

expediō, ire, ivī, itum, *extricate; make ready; expeditus, a, um, unencumbered, light-armed; easy.*

expellō, ere, pulī, pulsum, *drive out, expel.*

experior, irī, pertus sum, *test, try.*

explōrātor, ōris, M., *scout.*

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *explore.*

expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *take by storm, capture.*

exsequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *enforce.*

exsilium, ī, N., *exile.*

exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *await, wait.*

exterior, ius, comp. of exterus, *outer.*

extrā, prep. with acc., *outside of.*

extrēmus, a, um, sup. of exterus, *extreme, farthest; ad extrēmum, at last.*

exūrō, ere, ussī, ūstum, *burn up.*

## F

facile, *easily.*

facilis, e, *easy.*

facinus, oris, N., *crime.*

faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *make, do; certiōrem faciō, inform.*

facultās, ātis, F., *opportunity.*

fāma, ae, F., *report.*

famēs, is, F., *hunger.*

familia, ae, F., *household, family.*

familiāris, e, *family; rēs familiāris, family property; familiāris, is, M., intimate friend.*

famula, ae, F., *servant, slave.*

Faustulus, ī, M., *Faustulus.*

fēmina, ae, F., *woman.*

ferē, *almost, about.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, bring.*

ferōx, ōcis, *fierce, bold.*

ferrum, ī, N., *sword.*

ferus, a, um, *wild, savage.*

fidēlis, e, *faithful.*

fidēs, ei, F., *faith, loyalty; pledge.*

fīlia, ae, F., *daughter.*

fīlius, ī, M., *son.*

fīniō, ire, ivī, itum, *end.*

fīnis, is, M., *end; pl., territory.*

fīnitimus, a, um, *neighboring, near.*

fīō, fierī, factus sum (pass. of faciō), *be made, be done; become; happen; certior fīō, be informed.*

fīrmiter, *firmly.*

fīrmus, a, um, *strong.*

Flāminius, ī, M., *Flaminius, a Roman name.*

flamma, ae, F., *flame.*

flūmen, minis, N., *river.*

fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow.*

forte, *by chance.*

fortis, e, *brave.*

fortiter, *bravely.*

fortitūdō, dinis, F., *bravery.*

fortūna, ae, F., *fortune.*

forum, ī, N., *the forum.*

fossa, ae, F., *ditch.*

frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum, *weaken.*

frāter, tris, M., *brother.*

frūmentārius, a, um, *abounding in grain.*

frūmentum, ī, N., *grain.*

frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*

fuga, ae, F., *flight.*

fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee*.  
 fugō, āre, āvī, ātum, *put to flight*.  
 fūnāle, is, N., *wax torch*.  
 fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *shed; rout*.  
 Furculae, ārum, F. pl., *Furculae*  
*Caudinae, the Caudine Forks,*  
*a narrow defile in Italy.*

## G

Gabīnius, ī, M., *Gabinus*.  
 Gallī, ōrum, M. pl., *Gauls*.  
 Gallia, ae, F., *Gaul*.  
 Gallicus, a, um, *Gallic*.  
 Garumna, ae, F., *Garonne, a river*  
*of Gaul*.  
 geminus, a, um, *twin-born, twin*.  
 Genāva, ae, F., *Geneva*.  
 gēns, gentis, F., *tribe*.  
 genus, eris, N., *birth, family*.  
 Germānī, ōrum, M. pl., *Germans*.  
 Germānia, ae, F., *Germany*.  
 gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, *perform;*  
*bellum gerō, wage war*.  
 gignō, ere, genuī, genitum, *beget;*  
*pass., be born*.  
 gladiātor, ōris, M., *gladiator*.  
 gladiātōrius, a, um, *of gladiators*.  
 gladius, ī, M., *sword*.  
 glōria, ae, F., *glory*.  
 Gracchus, ī, M., *Gracchus*.  
 Graecī, ōrum, M. pl., *Greeks*.  
 Graecia, ae, F., *Greece*.  
 Graiocelī, ōrum, M. pl., *Graioceli,*  
*a people of Gaul*.  
 graphium, ī, N., *writing-style*.  
 grātia, ae, F., *favor; influence*.  
 grātus, a, um, *pleasing*.  
 gravis, e, *severe, serious*.  
 graviter, *severely*.

## H

habeō, ēre, uī, itum, *have; ōrā-*  
*tiōnem habeō, deliver a speech*.  
 Hamilcar, caris, M., *Hamilcar*.  
 Hannibal, balis, M., *Hannibal*.  
 Hannō, ōnis, M., *Hanno*.  
 Hasdrubal, balis, M., *Hasdrubal*.  
 Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian; pl.*  
*Helvētīi, ōrum, M., Helvetians,*  
*a people of Gaul*.  
 Herennius, ī, M., *Herennius*.  
 hiberna, ōrum, N. pl., *winter*  
*quarters*.  
 hīc, haec, hōc, *this*.  
 hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, *pass the*  
*winter*.  
 hiems, emis, F., *winter*.  
 Hierō, ōnis, M., *Hiero*.  
 hinc, *hence*.  
 Hispānia, ae, F., *Spain*.  
 homō, minis, M., *man*.  
 honor, ōris, M., *honor*.  
 hōra, ae, F., *hour*.  
 hostis, is, M., *enemy; pl., the enemy*.  
 hūmānitās, ātis, F., *refinement*.

## I

iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactum, *throw*.  
 iactātiō, ōnis, F., *tossing*.  
 iam, *now; already*.  
 Iāniculum, ī, N., *Janiculum, one*  
*of the hills of Rome*.  
 ibi, *there*.  
 idem, eadem, idem, *the same*.  
 idōneus, a, um, *suitable*.  
 Idūs, uum, F. pl., *the Ides, the 15th*  
*of March, May, July, and October,*  
*and the 13th of other months.*

igitur, postpositive, *accordingly*.  
 ignis, is, M., *fire*.  
 ille, illa, illud, *that; he, she, it; pl., they*.  
 immortalis, e, *immortal*.  
 immōtus, a, um, *unmoved*.  
 impatiēns, entis, *impatient, not able to endure*.  
 impedīmentum, ī, N., *hindrance; pl., baggage*.  
 impediō, īre, īvī (ii), itum, *hinder*.  
 impendeō, ēre, *overhang; threaten*.  
 imperātor, ōris, M., *commander*.  
 imperium, ī, N., *command; power, control*.  
 imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, *command; levy*.  
 impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *obtain (by request)*.  
 impetus, ūs, M., *attack*.  
 importō, āre, āvī, ātum, *bring in, import*.  
 improbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *disapprove, reject*.  
 in, prep. with acc., *into, to; against; in; with abl., in, on; among*.  
 incendium, ī, N., *fire*.  
 incendō, ere, cendī, cēsum, *burn*.  
 incitō, āre, āvī, ātum, *urge on; incite*.  
 incolō, ere, uī, *inhabit, dwell*.  
 incolumis, e, *unharmed, safe*.  
 incredibilis, e, *incredible*.  
 inde, *thence*.  
 indicium, ī, N., *information*.  
 indicō, ere, dīxī, dictum, *declare*.  
 indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead in; induce*.  
 ineō, īre, iī, itum, *enter; cōsiliū ineō, form a plan*.

inermis, e, *unarmed*.  
 inferior, ius, comp. of īferus, *lower*.  
 inferō, ferre, tulī, illātum, *bring upon, inflict; bellum inferō, make war on*.  
 infestō, āre, āvī, ātum, *infest, ravage*.  
 infestus, a, um, *hostile*.  
 infinitus, a, um, *infinite, immense*.  
 influō, ere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow into*.  
 infrā, prep. with acc., *below*.  
 ingenium, ī, N., *character; genius, ability*.  
 ingēns, entis, *huge, great*.  
 ingenuus, a, um, *free-born*.  
 ingredior, gredī, gressus sum, *enter*.  
 inimīcus, a, um, *unfriendly, hostile; inimīcus, ī, M., (personal) enemy*.  
 inīquus, a, um, *unkind; unfavorable*.  
 initium, ī, N., *beginning*.  
 iniūria, ae, F., *injury, wrong*.  
 inopia, ae, F., *want*.  
 inopināns, antis, *not expecting*.  
 inquam, def., *say*.  
 insidiae, ārum, F. pl., *ambush; plot*.  
 insīgnis, e, *remarkable, memorable*.  
 insolēns, entis, *insolent, arrogant*.  
 insolenter, *haughtily, arrogantly*.  
 instituō, ere, stituī, stitūtum, *establish*.  
 institūtum, ī, N., *institution, custom*.  
 instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum, *draw up*.

īnsula, ae, F., *island*.  
 intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum, *know, understand*.  
 inter, prep. with acc., *between, among*.  
 intercēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *intervene*.  
 interdiū, *by day*.  
 intereā, *meanwhile*.  
 interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *kill*.  
 interim, *meanwhile*.  
 interimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptum, *kill*.  
 interrēgnum, ī, N., *interregnum*.  
 intrā, prep. with acc., *within*.  
 invādō, ere, vāsī, vāsum, *invade*.  
 inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, *find*.  
 invītus, a, um, *unwilling, against one's will*.  
 ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self*.  
 irrideō, ēre, rīsī, rīsum, *ridicule*.  
 irruō, ere, ruī, *rush into*.  
 is, ea, id, *that; he, she, it; pl., they*.  
 iste, ista, istud, *that*.  
 ita, *thus, so*.  
 Ītalia, ae, F., *Italy*.  
 itaque, *therefore*.  
 item, *likewise*.  
 iter, itineris, N., *journey, march; road; iter faciō, march*.  
 iterum, *again, a second time*.  
 iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussum, *order*.  
 iūdex, dicis, M., *judge*.  
 iūdicium, ī, N., *trial*.  
 iūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, *judge*.  
 iugulum, ī, N., *throat*.  
 iugum, ī, N., *yoke*.  
 Iugurtha, ae, M., *Jugurtha, king of Numidia*.  
 Iūlius, ī, M., *Julius, a Roman name*.

iūmentum, ī, N., *beast of burden*.  
 iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūctum, *join*.  
 Iūnius, ī, M., *Junius, a Roman name*.  
 Iuppiter, Iovis, M., *Jupiter*.  
 Iūra, ae, M., *Jura, a range of mountains in Gaul*.  
 iūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *swear*.  
 iūs, iūris, N., *right, law, justice*.  
 iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, N., *oath*.  
 (iussus, ūs), M., *used only in abl. sing., order*.  
 iūstus, a, um, *just*.  
 iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtum, *aid*.

## K

Kalendae, ārum, F. pl., *the Calends, the first day of the month*.

## L

L., *abbreviation for Lūcius, a Roman first name*.  
 Labiēnus, ī, M., *Labienus, a lieutenant of Caesar*.  
 labor, ōris, M., *labor*.  
 labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *suffer*.  
 lacrima, ae, F., *tear*.  
 lacus, ūs, M., *lake*.  
 lapis, idis, M., *stone*.  
 largitiō, ōnis, F., *bribery*.  
 lātē, *widely; longē lātēque, far and wide*.  
 lātitūdō, dinis, F., *breadth*.  
 Latium, ī, N., *Latium, a country of Italy*.  
 Latobrigī, ōrum, M. pl., *Latobrigi, a people of Gaul*.



latus, eris, N., *side, flank*; ab latere, *on the flank*.

lātus, a, um, *broad, wide*.

laudō, āre, āvī, ātum, *praise*.

Lāvīnia, ae, F., *Lavinia*.

Lāvīnium, ī, N., *Lavinium*, a town of Italy.

lectīca, ae, F., *litter*.

lēgātīō, ōnis, F., *embassy*.

lēgātus, ī, M., *ambassador*; lieutenant.

legiō, ōnis, F., *legion*.

Lemannus, ī, M., *Lake of Geneva*.

lēnitās, ātis, F., *smoothness*.

lētālis, e, *fatal*.

lēx, lēgis, F., *law*.

liber, era, erum, *free*.

liberī, ōrum, M. pl., *children*.

liberō, āre, āvī, ātum, *free*.

libertās, ātis, F., *liberty*.

licet, ēre, licuit, impers., *it is permitted*; (one) *may*.

Licinius, ī, M., *Licinius*, a Roman name.

Ligurēs, um, M. pl., *Ligurians*, a people of Cisalpine Gaul.

Lilybaeum, ī, N., *Lilybaeum*, a promontory of Sicily.

lingua, ae, F., *language*.

linter, tris, F., *boat*.

litterae, ārum, F. pl., *letter*.

locus, ī, M., *place*; pl. loca, ōrum, N.

longē, *far, by far*.

longitūdō, dinis, F., *length*.

longus, a, um, *long*.

Lucrētia, ae, F., *Lucretia*.

lūdus, ī, M., *school*.

lupa, ae, F., *she-wolf*.

Lutātius, ī, M., *Lutatius*, a Roman name.

## M

M., abbreviation for *Mārcus*, a Roman first name.

Macedonia, ae, F., *Macedonia*, a country north of Greece.

magis, adv., *more, rather*.

magistrātus, ūs, M., *magistrate*.

māgnitūdō, dinis, F., *greatness, size*.

māgnus, a, um, *large, great*.

māior, us, comp. of *māgnus*, *larger, greater*.

māiōrēs, um, M. pl., *ancestors*.

maleficium, ī, N., *harm*.

mālō, mälle, mālūī, *prefer*.

malum, ī, N., *misfortune*.

malus, a, um, *bad, wicked*.

mandō, āre, āvī, ātum, *commit*; *command*.

māne, *early in the morning*.

maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain*.

Mānlius, ī, M., *Manlius*, a Roman name.

manūmittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *set free*.

manus, ūs, F., *hand*; *band* (of men).

Mārcius, ī, M., *Marcus*, a Roman name.

mare, is, N., *sea*.

maritimus, a, um, *maritime*; ōra *maritima, sea-coast*.

marītus, ī, M., *husband*.

Marius, ī, M., *Marius*.

Mārs, Mārtis, M., *Mars*.

Mārtius, a, um, *of March*.

māter, tris, F., *mother*.

mātrimōnium, ī, N., *marriage*.



**Matrona**, ae, F., *Marne*, a river of Gaul.

**mātūrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *hasten*.

**māximē**, adv., *most, especially*.

**māximus**, a, um, sup. of **māgnus**, *largest, greatest*.

**medius**, a, um, *middle, middle of*.

**melior**, ius, comp. of **bonus**, *better*.

**meminī**, isse, def., *remember*.

**memoria**, ae, F., *memory*.

**mēnsis**, is, M., *month*.

**mentiō**, ōnis, F., *mention*.

**mercātor**, ōris, M., *trader*.

**mereō**, ēre, uī, itum, *deserve, earn*.

**mereor**, ērī, itus sum, *deserve*.

**mergō**, ere, mersī, mersum, *sink*.

**merīdiēs**, diēī, M., *noon*.

**meritum**, ī, N., *service*.

**Messāla**, ae, M., *Messala*.

**metus**, ūs, M., *fear*.

**meus**, a, um, *my*.

**migrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *depart*.

**mīles**, itis, M., *soldier*.

**mīlitō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *serve in war*.

**mīlle**, indecl., *thousand*; pl. **mīlia**,

ium, N. (New, § 134 d; Old, § 94 e).

**Minerva**, ae, F., *Minerva*.

**minimē**, adv., sup. of **parum**, *least*.

**minimus**, a, um, sup. of **parvus**, *smallest, least*.

**minor**, ārī, ātus sum, *threaten*.

**minor**, us, comp. of **parvus**, *smaller*; **minor** (nātū), *younger*.

**minus**, adv., comp. of **parum**, *less*.

**miser**, era, erum, *wretched*.

**Mithridātēs**, is, M., *Mithridates*.

**Mithridāticus**, a, um, *Mithridatic*.

**mittō**, ere, mīsī, missum, *send*.

**modus**, ī, M., *manner, kind*.

**moenia**, ium, N. pl., *walls* (of a city).  
**molliō**, īre, īvī, ītum, *soften, moderate*.

**molō**, ere, uī, itum, *grind*.

**monitus**, ūs, M., *advice*.

**mōns**, montis, M., *mountain*.

**mora**, ae, F., *delay*.

**morbus**, ī, M., *disease*.

**morior**, morī, mortuus sum, *die*.

**moror**, ārī, ātus sum, *delay*.

**mors**, mortis, F., *death*.

**mōs**, mōris, M., *custom*; pl., *character*.

**mōtus**, ūs, M., *revolt*.

**moveō**, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move*; *stir up*.

**mox**, soon.

**multitūdō**, dinis, F., *multitude, great number*.

**multō**, adv., *much, by far*.

**multum**, adv., *much*.

**multus**, a, um, *much*; pl., *many*.

**mūniō**, īre, īvī (iī), ītum, *fortify*.

**mūnitiō**, ōnis, F., *fortification*.

**mūrus**, ī, M., *wall*.

## N

**nam**, for.

**Nammēius**, ī, M., *Nammeius*, a Helvetian.

**nāscor**, nāscī, nātus sum, *be born*.

**nātūra**, ae, F., *nature*.

(nātus, ūs), M., used only in abl. sing., *birth*.

**nauta**, ae, M., *sailor*.

**nāvālis**, e, *naval*.

**nāvigātiō**, ōnis, F., *navigation*.

**nāvigō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *sail*.

**nāvis**, is, F., *ship*.

**-ne**, enclitic interrogative particle.

*nē*, *not; that . . . not, lest; nē . . .*

*quidem*, *not even* (New, § 322 *f*;

Old, § 151 *e*).

*nec*, see *neque*.

*necessārius*, *ī*, M., *relative*.

*necō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *kill*.

*negō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *deny*.

*nēmō*, (*nēminis*), M., *no one*.

*nepōs*, *ōtis*, M., *grandson*.

*neque* (*nec*), *and not, nor; neque*  
(*nec*) . . . *neque* (*nec*), *neither*  
. . . *nor*.

*Nerviī*, *ōrum*, M. pl., *Nervii*, a  
people of Gaul.

*nihil*, N., indecl., *nothing; acc. as*  
*adv.*, *not at all*.

*nihilum*, *ī*, N., *nothing; abl. ni-*  
*hilō*, *by nothing; nihilō minus*,  
*none the less*.

*nisi*, *if not, unless*.

*nōbilis*, *e*, *noble*.

*nōbilitās*, *ātis*, F., *nobility*.

*noctū*, *by night*.

*nocturnus*, *a*, *um*, *night, at night*.

*nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*, *be unwilling*.

*nōmen*, *minis*, N., *name*.

*nōn*, *not*.

*nōnāgēsīmus*, *a*, *um*, *ninetieth*.

*nōndum*, *not yet*.

*nōnnūllus*, *a*, *um*, *some*.

*nōnnumquam*, *sometimes*.

*Nōrēia*, *ae*, F., *Noreia*, a city of  
Gaul.

*Nōricus*, *a*, *um*, *Norican*.

*nōs*, *nostrum*, see *ego*.

*noster*, *tra*, *trum*, *our*.

*novem*, indecl., *nine*.

*novus*, *a*, *um*, *new; novae rēs*,  
*revolution; novissimum agmen*,  
*the rear*.

*nox*, *noctis*, F., *night*.

*nūbō*, *ere*, *nūpsī*, *nūptum*, *marry*.

*nūllus*, *a*, *um* (gen. *-īus*), *no*,  
*none*.

*num*, interrogative particle, ex-  
pecting answer *No*.

*Numa*, *ae*, M., *Numa* (*Pompilius*),  
second king of Rome.

*numerus*, *ī*, M., *number*.

*Numidae*, *ārum*, M. pl., *Numid-*  
*ians*.

*Numidia*, *ae*, F., *Numidia*, a coun-  
try of Africa.

*Numitor*, *ōris*, M., *Numitor*.

*numquam*, *never*.

*nunc*, *now*.

*nūntiō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *report*.

*nūntius*, *ī*, M., *messenger*.

*nūper*, *recently*.

*nūtriō*, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītum*, *nurse, bring*  
*up*.

*nympha*, *ae*, F., *nymph*.

## O

*ob*, prep. with acc., *on account of*.

*obaerātus*, *ī*, M., *debtor*.

*obligō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *bind, put*  
*under obligation*.

*oblīvīscor*, *līvīscī*, *lītus sum*, *for-*  
*get*.

*oboediō*, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītum*, *obey*.

*obses*, *sidis*, M., *hostage*.

*obsideō*, *ēre*, *sēdī*, *sessum*, *be-*  
*siege, blockade*.

*obstringō*, *ere*, *strinxī*, *strictum*,  
*bind*.

*obtestor*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, *entreat*.

*obtineō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentum*, *hold*,  
*obtain, possess*.

obvolvō, ere, volvī, volūtum,  
*cover.*

occāsus, ūs, M., *setting.*

occidō, ere, cīdī, cīsum, *kill.*

occupō, āre, āvī, ātum, *occupy,*  
*seize.*

occurrō, ere, currī, cursum, *meet.*

Ōceanus, ī, M., *ocean.*

Ocelum, ī, N., *Ocelum*, a town of  
Gaul.

Octāviānus, ī, M., *Octavianus.*

octāvus, a, um, *eighth.*

octōgēsīmus, a, um, *eightieth.*

octōgintā, indecl., *eighty.*

odium, ī, N., *hatred.*

omnīnō, *altogether.*

omnis, e, *all.*

opīniō, ōnis, F., *opinion; reputation.*

oportet, ēre, oportuit, impers., *it*  
*is necessary, it is proper; (one)*  
*ought.*

oppidum, ī, N., *town.*

oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *assault.*

optimus, a, um, sup. of bonus,  
*best, most excellent.*

optiō, ōnis, F., *choice.*

opus, eris, N., *work.*

ōra, ae, F., *coast.*

ōrātiō, ōnis, F., *speech; ōrātiōnem*  
*habeō, deliver a speech.*

ōrātor, ōris, M., *orator.*

orbis, is, M., *circle; orbis terrā-*  
*rum, the world.*

ōrdinō, āre, āvī, ātum, *arrange,*  
*institute.*

ōrdō, dinis, M., *order, rank.*

orior, irī, ortus sum, *rise, arise.*

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *beg, entreat.*

ostendō, ere, tendī, tentum, *show;*  
*declare.*

## P

P., abbreviation for Pūblius, a  
Roman first name.

pācō, āre, āvī, ātum, *pacify, sub-*  
*due.*

paene, *almost.*

paenitet, ēre, paenituit, impers.,  
*it repents; mē paenitet, I re-*  
*pent.*

pāgus, ī, M., *district, canton.*

palūs, ūdis, F., *swamp.*

pār, paris, *equal.*

parātus, a, um, *ready.*

parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum,  
*spare.*

pariō, ere, peperī, paritum or  
partum, *bring forth.*

parō, āre, āvī, ātum, *prepare.*

pars, partis, F., *part; side, direc-*  
*tion.*

parum, adv., *little, too little.*

parvus, a, um, *small.*

passus, ūs, M., *pace; mille pas-*  
*sūs, mile; pl. mīlia passuum.*

pāstor, ōris, M., *shepherd.*

patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factum (pass.  
patefīō), *open; disclose.*

patēns, entis, *open.*

pateō, ēre, uī, *be open; be clear.*

pater, tris, M., *father.*

paternus, a, um, *of one's father.*

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer,*  
*endure; allow.*

patria, ae, F., (native) *country.*

patrimōnium, ī, N., *inheritance.*

paucī, ae, a, pl., *few.*

paulātīm, *gradually.*

paulō, adv., *by a little, a little.*

paulum, adv., *a little.*

Paulus, ī, M., *Paulus*, a Roman name.

pāx, pācis, F., *peace*.

pecūnia, ae, F., *money*.

pedes, itis, M., *foot-soldier*; pl., *infantry*.

pedester, tris, tre, *on foot*; pedes-trēs cōpiae, *infantry*.

pēior, us, comp. of malus, *worse*.

pelliciō, ere, lexī, lectum, *entice*.

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive*; *rout*.

per, prep. with acc., *through*; *during*.

percussor, ōris, M., *murderer*.

perdō, ere, didī, ditum, *lose*.

perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *extend*.

perennis, e, *everlasting*.

pereō, ire, iī, itum, *perish, die*.

perfacilis, e, *very easy*.

perferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *convey*; *endure*.

perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *carry out, complete*.

perīculum, ī, N., *danger*.

perītus, a, um, *skilled*.

permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *alarm, disturb*.

perpaucī, ae, a, pl., *very few*.

perpetuō, adv., *perpetually*.

perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, *break through*.

persolvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, *pay*.

persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *persuade*.

perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *terrify*.

pertineō, ēre, uī, extend; *pertain, tend*.

perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum, *disturb, throw into confusion*.

pervenīō, ire, vēnī, ventum, *come, arrive*.

pēs, pedis, M., *foot*.

pessimus, a, um, sup. of malus, *worst, most wicked*.

petō, ere, ivī (iī), itum, *seek, beg*; *attack*; *go to*.

Pharsālus, ī, F., *Pharsalus*, a town of Thessaly.

pīlum, ī, N., *javelin*.

Pīsō, ōnis, M., *Piso*.

placeō, ēre, uī, itum, *please*.

plēbs, plēbis, F., *common people*.

plūrimus, a, um, sup. of multus, *most, very much*.

plūs, plūris, comp. of multus, *more*.

poena, ae, F., *punishment, penalty*.

Poenī, ōrum, M. pl., *Carthaginians*.

polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise*.

Pompēius, ī, M., *Pompey*.

Pompilius, ī, *Pompilius*; see Numa.

pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *place*; *castra pōnō, pitch a camp*.

pōns, pontis, M., *bridge*.

Pontius, ī, M., *Pontius* (*Telesinus*), a leader of the Samnites.

Pontus, ī, M., *Pontus*, a country of Asia Minor.

populor, ārī, ātus sum, *ravage*.

populus, ī, M., *people*.

porta, ae, F., *gate*.

portendō, ere, tendī, tentum, *foretell, predict*.

portō, āre, āvī, ātum, *carry.*

portus, ūs, M., *harbor.*

poscō, ere, poposcī, *demand.*

possessiō, ōnis, F., *possession.*

possideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *possess.*

possum, posse, potuī, *am able, can.*

post, adv., *afterwards.*

post, prep. with acc., *after.*

posteā, *afterwards.*

postquam, *after.*

postrīdiē, *on the next day.*

postulō, āre, āvī, ātum, *demand.*

Postumius, ī, M., *Postumius, a Roman name.*

potēns, entis, *powerful.*

potestās, ātis, F., *power.*

potior, īrī, ītus sum, *obtain possession of.*

praebeō, ēre, uī, itum, *hold out, offer.*

praecēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *surpass.*

praecīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum, *cut off.*

praeclārē, *gloriously.*

praeda, ae, F., *booty, plunder.*

praedō, ōnis, M., *pirate.*

praedor, ārī, ātus sum, *plunder.*

praeferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *prefer.*

praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *place in command of.*

praemium, ī, N., *reward.*

praesertim, *especially.*

praesidium, ī, N., *protection; guard, garrison.*

praestō, āre, stitī, stitum, *excel.*

praesum, esse, fuī, *be in command of.*

praeter, prep. with acc., *except.*

praetor, ōris, M., *praetor.*

praetōrius, a, um, *of praetorian rank.*

premō, ere, pressī, pressum, *press hard; overwhelm.*

primō, *at first.*

primum, adv., *first.*

primus, a, um, sup. of prior, *first.*

prīnceps, cipis, adj., *first, chief; as noun, M., chief, leading man.*

prīncipātus, ūs, M., *leadership.*

prior, prius, comp. adj., *former.*

Prīscus, ī, M., *Priscus, surname of the first Tarquinius.*

priusquam, *before.*

prīvātus, a, um, *private.*

prō, prep. with abl., *for, in behalf of; before; instead of; considering.*

probō, āre, āvī, ātum, *show.*

Procās, ae, M., *Procas, king of Alba.*

prōcōnsul, ulis, M., *proconsul.*

procul, *far off, at a distance.*

prōdigium, ī, N., *omen.*

prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *prolong.*

proelium, ī, N., *battle.*

profectiō, ōnis, F., *departure.*

proficīscor, ficīscī, fectus sum, *set out.*

profugiō, ere, fūgī, *flee.*

prōgredior, gredī, gressus sum, *advance.*

prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *keep off, prevent.*

prōmineō, ēre, uī, *lean out.*

**prōmunturium**, ī, N., *promontory*.

**prope**, adv. and prep. with acc., *near*.

**propior**, ius, comp. of **prope**, *nearer*.

**propius**, adv., comp. of **prope**, *nearer*.

**propter**, prep. with acc., *on account of*.

**propterea**, *on this account*; **propterea** quod, *because*.

**prōscribō**, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *publish*; *proscribe*.

**prōsiliō**, īre, siluī, *spring up*.

**prōsperē**, *successfully*.

**prōsum**, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfūtūrus, *benefit*.

**prōvincia**, ae, F., *province*.

**proximē**, adv., sup. of **prope**, *very near*.

**proximus**, a, um, sup. of **prope**, *nearest, next*.

**Pūblicola**, ae, M., *Publicola*.

**pūblicus**, a, um, *public*; **rēs pūblica**, gen. reī pūblīcae, F., *commonwealth, state*.

**puer**, puerī, M., *boy*.

**pueritia**, ae, F., *boyhood*.

**pugiō**, ōnis, M., *dagger*.

**pūgna**, ae, F., *fight, battle*.

**pūgnō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *fight*.

**pulcher**, chra, chrum, *beautiful*.

**Pūnicus**, a, um, *Punic*.

**pūniō**, īre, īvī, ītum, *punish*.

**putō**, āre, āvī, ātum, *think*.

**Pyrēnaeus**, a, um, *Pyrenean*; as noun, **Pyrēnaeus**, ī, M., *Pyrenees*.

## Q

**Q.**, abbreviation for **Quīntus**, a Roman first name.

**quā**, adv., *where*.

**quadrāgintā**, indecl., *forty*.

**quadrīngentēsīmus**, a, um, *four hundredth*.

**quadrīngentī**, ae, a, *four hundred*.

**quaerō**, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *inquire*.

**quam**, *than*.

**quamquam**, *although*.

**quantus**, a, um, *how great*.

**quārē**, *wherefore*.

**quārtus**, a, um, *fourth*.

**quasi**, *as if*.

**quattuor**, indecl., *four*.

**quattuordecim**, indecl., *fourteen*.

**-que**, enclitic conj., *and*.

**queror**, querī, questus sum, *complain*.

**quī**, quae, quod, *who, which, that*.

**quia**, *because*.

**quid**, *why?*

**quīdam**, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), *a certain*.

**quidem**, *indeed*; **nē . . . quidem**, *not even* (New, § 322 f; Old, § 151 e).

**quiētus**, a, um, *calm*.

**quīn**, *that*.

**quīndecim**, indecl., *fifteen*.

**quīngentēsīmus**, a, um, *five hundredth*.

**quīngentī**, ae, a, *five hundred*.

**quīnquāgēsīmus**, a, um, *fiftieth*.

**quīnque**, indecl., *five*.

**quīntum**, adv., *for the fifth time*.

**quīntus**, a, um, *fifth*.



quis, quid, interrog. pron., *who?*  
*what?* adj. quī, quae, quod,  
*which? what?*

quis, quid, indef. pron., *any one,*  
*anything* (New, § 149 *b*; Old,  
 § 105 *d*).

quisquam, quidquam (quicquam),  
*any one, anything.*

quisque, quidque, adj. quisque,  
 quaeque, quodque, *each, every.*

quō, conj., *that, in order that.*

quod, *because; the fact that, that.*

quōminus, *that not, from.*

quoniam, *since.*

quoque, postpositive, *also.*

## R

ratis, is, F., *raft.*

Rauracī, ōrum, M. pl., *Rauraci, a*  
*people of Gaul.*

recēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *retire,*  
*withdraw.*

recēns, entis, *recent.*

recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, *recover;*  
*receive; with reflexive sē, retreat.*

reddō, ere, didī, ditum, *give back;*  
*render.*

redeō, īre, iī, itum, *return.*

reditiō, ōnis, F., *return.*

referō, ferre, rettulī, relātum,  
*bring back.*

refluō, ere, *flow back.*

rēgīna, ae, F., *queen.*

regiō, ōnis, F., *region.*

rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum, *reign.*

rēgnum, ī, N., *royal power; king-*  
*dom.*

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule.*

regredior, gredī, gressus sum,  
*return.*

relinquō, ere, līquī, lictum, *leave.*  
 reliquus, a, um, *remaining, rest*  
*of; pl. reliquī, ōrum, M., the rest.*

Remus, ī, M., *Remus.*

renovō, āre, āvī, ātum, *renew.*

renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, *report.*

renuō, ere, nuī, *refuse.*

repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum,  
*drive back, repulse.*

repentinus, a, um, *sudden, unex-*  
*pected.*

reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum,  
*discover.*

rēs, reī, F., *thing, matter, affair;*  
 rēs pūblica, *commonwealth, state.*

rescindō, ere, scidī, scissum, *de-*  
*stroy.*

resistō, ere, stitī, *resist.*

respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum,  
*reply.*

respōnsum, ī, N., *reply.*

restituō, ere, stituī, stitūtum, *re-*  
*store.*

retineō, ēre, uī, tentum, *detain, keep.*

revertor, vertī, (revertī, perf. act.),  
*return.*

rēx, rēgis, M., *king.*

Rhēa, ae, F., *Rhea (Silvia), mother*  
*of Romulus and Remus.*

Rhēnus, ī, M., *Rhine.*

Rhodanus, ī, M., *Rhone.*

rīpa, ae, F., *bank.*

rogō, āre, āvī, ātum, *ask.*

Rōma, ae, F., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman; pl.*

Rōmānī, ōrum, M., *Romans.*

Rōmulus, ī, M., *Romulus.*

rōstrum, ī, N., *beak (of ship); pl.,*  
*the rostra.*

rūrsus, *again.*



S

Sabīnī, ōrum, M. pl., *Sabines*, a people of Italy.

sacer, cra, crum, *sacred*; sacra, ōrum, N. pl., *sacred rites*.

sacerdōs, ōtis, F., *priestess*.

saepe, *often*.

Saguntīnī, ōrum, M. pl., *Saguntines*.

Saguntum, ī, N., *Saguntum*, a town of Spain.

salūs, ūtis, F., *safety*.

Samnītēs, ium, M. pl., *Samnites*, a people of Italy.

sanguis, inis, M., *blood*.

Santonēs, um, or Santonī, ōrum, M. pl., *Santones*, a people of Gaul.

sapiēns, entis, *wise*.

satis, adv., *enough*.

scelus, eris, N., *crime*.

sciō, īre, īvī, ītum, *know*.

Scīpiō, ōnis, M., *Scipio*.

scribō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write*.

scūtum, ī, N., *shield*.

sē, *himself, herself, itself, themselves*.

secundus, a, um, *second*; *favorable*.

sed, *but*.

sēdecim, indecl., *sixteen*.

sēditō, ōnis, F., *sedition, mutiny*.

Segusiāvī, ōrum, M. pl., *Segusiavi*, a people of Gaul.

semel, *once*.

sēmentis, is, F., *sowing*.

semper, *always*.

Semprōnius, ī, M., *Sempronius*, a Roman name.

senātor, ōris, M., *senator*.

senātus, ūs, M., *senate*.

Senonēs, um, M. pl., *Senones*, a people of Gaul.

sententia, ae, F., *opinion*.

sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, *perceive*.

sepliō, īre, īvī, sepultum, *bury*.

septem, indecl., *seven*.

septentriō, ōnis, and pl. septentriōnēs, um, M., *the north*.

septimus, a, um, *seventh*.

septingentēsimus, a, um, *seven hundredth*.

septuāgintā, indecl., *seventy*.

Sēquana, ae, F., *Seine*, a river of Gaul.

Sēquanus, ī, M., *a Sequanian*; pl.

Sēquanī, ōrum, M., *Sequanians*, a people of Gaul.

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*.

servitūs, ūtis, F., *slavery*.

Servius Tullius, ī, M., *Servius Tullius*, sixth king of Rome.

servō, āre, āvī, ātum, *save*; *guard, protect*.

servus, ī, M., *slave*.

sex, indecl., *six*.

sexāgintā, indecl., *sixty*.

sexcentēsimus, a, um, *six hundredth*.

sextus, a, um, *sixth*.

sī, *if*.

sīc, *so*.

siccus, a, um, *dry*.

Sicilia, ae, F., *Sicily*.

sīcutī, *just as*.

sīgnum, ī, N., *signal*; *standard*.

silva, ae, F., *forest*.

Silvia, ae, F., *Silvia*; see Rhēa.

Silvius, ī, M., *Silvius (Procas)*,  
king of Alba.

similis, e, *like*.

simul, *at the same time*.

sine, prep. with abl., *without*.

singulī, ae, a, pl., *one by one, one each*.

sive . . . sive, *whether . . . or*.

socer, erī, M., *father-in-law*.

societās, ātis, F., *alliance*.

socius, ī, M., *companion, ally*.

solum, ī, N., *soil*.

solum, *only*; nōn solum . . . sed  
etiam, *not only . . . but also*.

solus, a, um (gen. -īus), *alone, only*.

sors, sortis, F., *fate*.

Spartacus, ī, M., *Spartacus*.

spatium, ī, N., *distance*; *interval*.

speciēs, ēī, F., *appearance*.

spectō, āre, āvī, ātum, *face, lie*.

spērō, āre, āvī, ātum, *hope*.

spēs, speī, F., *hope*.

spolium, ī, N., *spoil, booty*.

sponte, F. abl., *on one's own account*.

Spurius, ī, M., *Spurius*, a Roman  
first name.

statim, *immediately*.

statiō, ōnis, F., *outpost*.

statuō, ere, statuī, statūtum, *de-  
termine*.

stīpendiārius, a, um, *tributary*.

strēnuus, a, um, *active*.

stringō, ere, strinxī, strictum,  
*draw*.

studeō, ēre, uī, *desire*.

studium, ī, N., *desire*; *zeal*.

sub, prep. with acc., *under*; with  
abl., *under, at the foot of*  
(New, § 220 c; Old, § 152 c).

subeō, īre, iī, itum, *undergo*.

subigō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *subdue*.

subitō, *suddenly*.

sublevō, āre, āvī, ātum, *assist*.

subsidiū, ī, N., *reinforcement*;  
*assistance*.

subveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *aid*,  
*assist*.

Sulla, ae, M., *Sulla*.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be*.

summus, a, um, sup. of superus,  
*highest, greatest*; *top of*.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum,  
*take*.

superbus, a, um, *proud*.

superior, ius, comp. of superus,  
*higher, upper*.

superō, āre, āvī, ātum, *defeat*.

superveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum,  
*come up*.

suppetō, ere, ivī, itum, *be at  
hand*.

supplicium, ī, N., *punishment*;  
sūmō supplicium dē, *inflict  
punishment on*.

suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, *un-  
dertake, assume*.

suspiciō, ōnis, F., *suspicion*.

sustineō, ēre, uī, tentum, *sus-  
tain*.

suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their  
(own)*.

Syphāx, ācis, M., *Syphax*.

Syrācūsae, ārum, F. pl., *Syracuse*,  
a city of Sicily.

## T

**T.**, abbreviation for **Titus**, a Roman first name.

**tam**, *so*.

**tamen**, *yet, nevertheless*.

**Tanaquil**, **ilis**, **F.**, *Tānaquil*, wife of **Tarquinius Priscus**.

**tandem**, *at length*.

**tantus**, **a**, **um**, *so great, so much*.

**Tarquinius**, **i**, **M.**, *Tarquin*, name of two kings of Rome.

**tegō**, **ere**, **tēxī**, **tēctum**, *cover; protect*.

**Telesinus**, **i**, **M.**, *Telesinus*; see **Pontius**.

**tēlum**, **i**, **N.**, *spear, weapon*.

**temperō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *refrain*.

**tempestās**, **ātis**, **F.**, *storm*.

**templum**, **i**, **N.**, *temple*.

**temptō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *try, attempt*.

**tempus**, **oris**, **N.**, *time*.

**teneō**, **ēre**, **uī**, *hold*.

**Terentius**, **i**, **M.**, *Terentius*, a Roman name.

**terra**, **ae**, **F.**, *land, country*.

**tertius**, **a**, **um**, *third*.

**Teutonī**, **ōrum**, **M. pl.**, *Teutons*.

**Thessalia**, **ae**, **F.**, *Thessaly*, a country of Greece.

**Tiberis**, **is**, **M.**, *Tiber*.

**tībīcen**, **cinis**, **M.**, *flute-player*.

**Tīcinus**, **i**, **M.**, *Ticinus*, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.

**Tigurīnus**, **a**, **um**, *of the Tigurini*; **pl. Tigurīnī**, **ōrum**, **M.**, *Tigurini*, a division of the Helvetians.

**timeō**, **ēre**, **uī**, *fear*.

**timor**, **ōris**, **M.**, *fear*.

**toga**, **ae**, **F.**, *toga*.

**tolerō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *endure*.

**tollō**, **ere**, **sustulī**, **sublātum**, *take up, take away*.

**Tolōsātēs**, **ium**, **M. pl.**, *Tolosates*, a people of Gaul.

**tot**, **indecl.**, *so many*.

**tōtus**, **a**, **um** (**gen. -ūs**), *whole*.

**trādō**, **ere**, **didī**, **ditum**, *deliver up; say*.

**trādūcō**, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**, *lead across*.

**trāiciō**, **ere**, **iēcī**, **iectum**, *cross over; pierce*.

**trāns**, **prep.** with **acc.**, *across*.

**trānseō**, **īre**, **iī**, **itum**, *go over, cross*.

**trānsigō**, **ere**, **ēgī**, **āctum**, *finish; pass, spend*.

**trānsiliō**, **īre**, **uī**, *leap over*.

**trānsitus**, **ūs**, **M.**, *crossing*.

**Trasumēnus**, **i**, **M.**, *Trasumenus*, a lake in Etruria.

**Trebia**, **ae**, **M.**, *Trebia*, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.

**trecentēsīmus**, **a**, **um**, *three hundredth*.

**tredecim**, **indecl.**, *thirteen*.

**trēs**, **tria**, *three*.

**tribūnus**, **i**, **M.**, *tribune*.

**tribuō**, **ere**, **uī**, **ūtum**, *grant*.

**trīcēsīmus**, **a**, **um**, *thirtieth*.

**trīduum**, **i**, **N.**, *three days*.

**trīgintā**, **indecl.**, *thirty*.

**trīumphō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, *triumph, celebrate a triumph*.

**Trōiānī**, **ōrum**, **M. pl.**, *Trojans*.

**tū**, **tuī**, *thou, you*; **pl. vōs**, *you*.

**tueor**, **tuērī**, *guard*.

**Tulingī**, **ōrum**, **M. pl.**, *Tulingi*, a people of Germany.

Tullius, ī, M., *Tullius*, a Roman name.

tum, *then*.

tumultus, ūs, M., *tumult, uproar*.

turpis, e, *disgraceful*.

turris, is, F., *tower*.

tūtus, a, um, *safe*.

tuus, a, um, *thy, your*.

## U

ūber, eris, N., *udder, breast*.

ubi, *where ; when*.

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *avenge*.

ūllus, a, um (gen. -īus), *any*.

ulterior, ius, comp. adj., *farther*.

ultimus, a, um, sup. of *ulterior*, *farthest, most distant*.

ultrā, prep. with acc., *beyond*.

umerus, ī, M., *shoulder*.

ūnā, adv., *together*.

unde, *whence*.

ūndecim, indecl., *eleven*.

ūndēquīnquāgintā, indecl., *forty-nine*.

undique, *from all sides, on all sides*.

ūniversus, a, um, *all together, whole*.

ūnus, a, um (gen. -īus), *one*.

urbs, urbis, F., *city ; especially Rome*.

ut, utī, *that, in order that ; so that ; as*.

uter, utra, utrum (gen. -īus), *which (of two)*.

uterque, utraque, utrumque (gen. utriusque), *each (of two), both*.

ūtilis, e, *useful*.

utinam, *would that !*

ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, enjoy*.

utrimque, *on both sides*.

utrum, *whether ; utrum . . . an, whether . . . or*.

uxor, ōris, F., *wife ; uxōrem dūcō, marry*.

## V

vacuus, a, um, *empty*.

vadum, ī, N., *ford*.

vāgītus, ūs, M., *crying*.

vagor, ārī, ātus sum, *roam*.

Valerius, ī, M., *Valerius*, a Roman name.

vallēs, is, F., *valley*.

vāllum, ī, N., *rampart*.

Varrō, ōnis, M., *Varro*.

vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum, *lay waste*.

vehementer, *violently, exceedingly*.

vel, *or ; vel . . . vel, either . . . or*.

vēndō, ere, didī, ditum, *sell*.

venēnum, ī, N., *poison*.

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come*.

ventus, ī, M., *wind*.

vereor, ērī, itus sum, *fear*.

vergō, ere, *incline, slope*.

vērō, postpositive, *but, however*.

Vērōna, ae, F., *Verona*, a city of Italy.

Verucloetius, ī, M., *Verucloetius*, a Helvetian.

Vesta, ae, F., *Vesta*, goddess of the household.

Vestālis, e, *Vestal*.

vester, tra, trum, *your*.

Veturius, ī, M., *Veturius*, a Roman name.

vetus, eris, *old*.

vexō, āre, āvī, ātum, *harass, ravage*.

via, ae, F., *road*.

vīcēsīmus, a, um, *twentieth*.

victor, ōris, M., *conqueror*; as adj., *victorious*.

victōria, ae, F., *victory*.

vīcus, ī, M., *village*.

videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*.

videor, ērī, vīsus sum (pass. of videō), *seem*.

vigilia, ae, F., *watch*.

vīgintī, indecl., *twenty*.

vīlla, ae, F., *country-seat*.

vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, *overcome*, *defeat*.

vinculum, ī, N., *chain*.

vindex, icis, M., *defender*.

vir, virī, M., *man*.

vīrēs, ium, pl. of vīs.

Virgīnia, ae, F., *Virginia*.

virgō, ginis, F., *virgin*, *maiden*.

virtūs, ūtis, F., *virtue*, *valor*.

vīs, vis, F., *force*, *violence*; pl.

vīrēs, ium, *strength* (New, § 79; Old, § 61).

vīta, ae, F., *life*.

vītō, āre, āvī, ātum, *avoid*.

vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctum, *live*.

vix, *scarcely*, *with difficulty*.

vocō, āre, āvī, ātum, *call*.

Vocontīi, ōrum, M. pl., *Vocontii*, a people of Gaul.

volō, velle, voluī, *wish*, *be willing*.

voluntās, ātis, F., *consent*.

vōs, vestrum, *see* tū.

vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum, *wound*.

vulnus, eris, N., *wound*.

## Z

Zama, ae, F., *Zama*, a town of Africa.



# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

## A

ability, ingenium, ī, N.  
 able, be, possum, posse, potuī.  
 about, circiter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*; ferē, *adv.*  
 access, aditus, ūs, M.  
 accomplish, cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fec-tum.  
 account, on this, proptereā.  
 account of, on, propter, *prep. with acc.*  
 accuse, accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 accustomed, become, cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētum.  
 across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*  
 advance, prōgredior, gredī, gressus sum.  
 advice, cōnsilium, ī, N.  
 Aeduan, Aeduus, a, um; Aeduans, Aeduī, ōrum, M. *pl.*  
 after (*conj.*), postquam.  
 after, post, *prep. with acc.*  
 afterwards, posteā.  
 again, rūsus.  
 against, contrā, *prep. with acc.*  
 against one's will, invītus, a, um.  
 aid, auxilium, ī, N.  
 aid, iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtum.  
 alarm, commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mō-tum; permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mō-tum.  
 all, omnis, e.

Allobroges, Allobrogēs, um, M. *pl.*  
 allow, patior, patī, passus sum.  
 ally, socius, ī, M.  
 almost, ferē.  
 alone, sōlus, a, um.  
 Alps, Alpēs, ium, F. *pl.*  
 already, iam.  
 also, etiam.  
 although, quamquam; etsī; cum.  
 always, semper.  
 ambassador, lēgātus, ī, M.  
 ambush, īnsidiae, ārum, F. *pl.*  
 among, inter; apud; *prep. with acc.*  
 ancestors, māiōrēs, um, M. *pl.*  
 and, et; atque; -que (*enclitic*).  
 and not, neque (nec).  
 another, alius, a, ud.  
 any, ūllus, a, um.  
 any one, anything, quis, quid (New, § 149 *b*; Old, § 105 *d*).  
 approach, adventus, ūs, M.  
 approach, accēdō, ere, cessī, ces-sum.  
 Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, M.  
 arm, armō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 arms, arma, ōrum, N. *pl.*  
 army, exercitus, ūs, M.; army (*in battle array*), aciēs, ēī, F.; army (*on the march*), agmen, minis, N.  
 arrival, adventus, ūs, M.  
 arrive, perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.  
 as, ut, *with ind.*  
 ask, rogō, āre, āvī, ātum.



assault, oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 assistance, subsidium, ī, N.  
 Athens, Athēnae, ārum, F. *pl.*  
 attack, impetus, ūs, M.  
 attack, adōrior, īrī, ortus sum;  
   aggredior, gredī, gressus sum.  
 authority, auctōritās, ātis, F.  
 auxiliaries, auxilia, ōrum, N. *pl.*  
 avoid, vitō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 await, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 away, be, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfu-  
   tūrus.

## B

bad, malus, a, um.  
 baggage, impedimenta, ōrum, N. *pl.*  
 band (*of men*), manus, ūs, F.  
 bank, rīpa, ae, F.  
 barbarian, barbarus, ī, M.  
 battle, proelium, ī, N.; pūgna, ae, F.  
 be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.  
 bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.  
 beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum.  
 because, quod.  
 become, fiō, fierī, factus sum.  
 before (*conj.*), priusquam.  
 before, ante, *adv. and prep. with*  
   *acc.*; prō, *prep. with abl.*  
 beg, ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 began, coepī, isse.  
 beginning, initium, ī, N.  
 Belgians, Belgae, ārum, M. *pl.*  
 besiege, obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum.  
 between, inter, *prep. with acc.*  
 blame, accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 blockade, obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum.  
 body, corpus, oris, N.  
 bold, ferōx, ōcis.  
 boldness, audācia, ae, F.  
 booty, praeda, ae, F.

born, be, nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.  
 both . . . and, et . . . et.  
 boy, puer, puerī, M.  
 brave, fortis, e.  
 bravely, fortiter.  
 bridge, pōns, pontis, M.  
 bright, clārus, a, um.  
 bring, addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum;  
   afferō, ferre, attulī, allātum.  
 bring about, efficiō, ere, fēcī, fec-  
   tum.  
 bring together, cōgō, ere, coēgī,  
   coāctum; cōnferō, ferre, tulī, col-  
   lātum.  
 bring upon, īnferō, ferre, tulī, il-  
   lātum.  
 Britain, Britannia, ae, F.  
 broad, lātus, a, um.  
 brother, frāter, tris, M.  
 building, aedificium, ī, N.  
 burn, incendō, ere, cendī, cēsum.  
 but, sed.  
 by, ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*

## C

Caesar, Caesar, aris, M.  
 call, appellō, āre, āvī, ātum; vocō,  
   āre, āvī, ātum.  
 call together, convocō, āre, āvī,  
   ātum.  
 camp, castra, ōrum, N. *pl.*  
 can, possum, posse, potuī.  
 canton, pāgus, ī, M.  
 captive, captīvus, ī, M.  
 capture, expugnō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 carefully, diligenter.  
 carry, portō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 Carthage, Carthāgō, ginis, F.  
 Catiline, Catilīna, ae, M.

cause, causa, ae, F.

cavalry, equitēs, um, M. *pl.*; equitātus, ūs, M.

centurion, centuriō, ōnis, M.

certain, certus, a, um; a certain, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam).

chain, vinculum, ī, N.

chief, prīnceps, cipis, M.

children, liberī, ōrum, M. *pl.*

choose, dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum.

Cicero, Cicerō, ōnis, M.

citadel, arx, arcis, F.

citizen, cīvis, is, M.

city, urbs, urbis, F.

clear, clārus, a, um.

clear, be, pateō, ēre, uī.

close, claudō, ere, clausī, clausum.

coast, ōra, ae, F.

cohort, cohors, hortis, F.

column, agmen, minis, N.

come, veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum; perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.

come together, conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum.

command, imperium, ī, N.

command, imperō, āre, āvī, ātum; place in command of, praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.

commander, imperātor, ōris, M.

commit, committō, ere, mīsī, missum.

common, commūnis, e.

common people, plēbs, plēbis, F.

commonwealth, rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, F.

companion, comes, itis, M.

compel, cōgō, ere, cōēgī, cōāctum.

complain, queror, querī, questus sum.

concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*

condemn, condemnō, āre, āvī, ātum.

condition, condiciō, ōnis, F.

conference, colloquium, ī, N.

confidence in, have, cōnfidō, ere, fīsus sum.

confusion, throw into, perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum.

conqueror, victor, ōris, M.

consider, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum.

conspiracy, coniūrātiō, ōnis, F.

consul, cōnsul, ulis, M.

contend, contendō, ere, tendī, tentum.

convey, perferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

convict, condemnō, āre, āvī, ātum.

Corinth, Corinthus, ī, F.

council, concilium, ī, N.

country, terra, ae, F.; (*native*)

country, patria, ae, F.

courage, animus, ī, M.

cover, tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum.

Crassus, Crassus, ī, M.

crime, facinus, oris, N.

cross, trānseō, īre, īi, itum.

cruel, crūdēlis, e.

custom, cōnsuētūdō, dinis, F.; mōs, mōris, M.

## D

daily, cotīdiē.

danger, perīculum, ī, N.

dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum.

daughter, filia, ae, F.

day, diēs, ēī, M. (*or F.*); three days, trīdium, ī, N.; on the next day, postrīdiē.

dear, cārus, a, um.

death, mors, mortis, F.

decree, cōnsultum, ī, N.  
 decree, dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum.  
 deep, altus, a, um.  
 defeat, superō, āre, āvī, ātum;  
 vincō, ere, vīcī, victum.  
 defend, dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsū.  
 delay, mora, ae, F.  
 delay, moror, ārī, ātus sum.  
 deliver a speech, ōrātiōnem habeo,  
 ēre, uī, itum.  
 deliver up, trādō, ere, didī, ditum.  
 demand, postulō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 depart, discēdō, ere, cessī, cessum.  
 departure, discessus, ūs, M.  
 desert, dēserō, serere, seruī, sertum.  
 desire, studium, ī, N.  
 desire, cupiō, ere, īvī, itum; studeō,  
 ēre, uī.  
 desirous, cupidus, a, um.  
 despair of, dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 destroy, dēlēō, ēre, ēvī, ētum.  
 detain, retineō, ēre, uī, tentum.  
 determine, cōstituō, ere, stituī,  
 stitūtum.  
 die, morior, morī, mortuus sum.  
 difficult, difficilis, e.  
 difficulty, with, vix.  
 diligence, diligentia, ae, F.  
 diligently, diligenter.  
 disaster, calamitās, ātis, F.  
 disclose, patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factum.  
 discover, reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum.  
 discuss, agō, ere, ēgī, āctum.  
 disgraceful, turpis, e.  
 dismiss, dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missum.  
 distance, spatium, ī, N.; at a distance, procul.  
 district, pāgus, ī, M.

disturb, perturbō, āre, āvī, ātum;  
 permovereō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.  
 ditch, fossa, ae, F.  
 do, faciō, ere, fēcī, factum; agō,  
 ere, ēgī, āctum.  
 done, be, fiō, fierī, factus sum.  
 doubt, dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 draw up, instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum.  
 drive, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum.  
 dwell, incolō, ere, uī.

## E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque  
 (quodque).  
 eager, ācer, ācris, ācre; cupidus,  
 a, um.  
 early in the morning, māne  
 easily, facile.  
 easy, facilis, e.  
 either . . . or, aut . . . aut.  
 elect, creō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 embassy, lēgatiō, ōnis, F.  
 encamp, cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessum.  
 encourage, cohortor, ārī, ātus sum.  
 end, finis, is, M.  
 end, fīniō, īre, īvī, itum.  
 endure, perferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.  
 enemy, hostis, is, M.; the enemy,  
 hostēs, ium, M. *pl.*  
 enemy (*personal*), inimicus, ī, M.  
 enjoy, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.  
 enough (*adv.*), satis.  
 enroll, cōscribō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.  
 enter, ineō, īre, īī, itum.  
 entreat, ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 equal, pār, paris.  
 escape, effugiō, ere, fūgī.  
 especially, praesertim.

**establish**, cōfirmō, āre, āvī, ātum.

**even**, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem (New, § 322 *f*; Old, § 151 *e*).

**every**, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque).

**excel**, praestō, āre, stitī, stitum.

**except**, praeter, *prep. with acc.*

**exile**, exsilium, ī, N.

**explore**, explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.

**exposed**, apertus, a, um.

**extend**, pertineō, ēre, uī.

**extreme**, extrēmus, a, um.

## F

**faith**, fidēs, eī, F.

**faithful**, fidēlis, e.

**famous**, clārus, a, um.

**far**, longē; **by far**, longē, multō;

**far and wide**, longē lātēque;

**far off**, procul.

**farther**, ulterior, ius.

**farthest**, extrēmus, a, um.

**father**, pater, tris, M.

**favor**, grātia, ae, F.

**favorable**, aequus, a, um.

**fear**, timor, ōris, M.; metus, ūs, M.

**fear**, timeō, ēre, uī; vereor, ērī, itus sum.

**few**, paucī, ae, a.

**field**, ager, agrī, M.

**fierce**, ferōx, ōcis.

**fiercely**, ācriter.

**fifteen**, quīndecim.

**fight**, pūgna, ae, F.

**fight**, pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum; dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātum.

**fill**, compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum.

**find**, inveniō, īre, vērī, ventum.

**find out**, comperiō, īre, perī, per-tum.

**finish**, cōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum.

**fire**, incendium, ī, N.

**first**, prīmus, a, um; **at first**, prīmō.

**five**, quīnque.

**flank**, latus, eris, N.; **on the flank**, ab latere.

**flee**, fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum.

**fleet**, classis, is, F.

**flight**, fuga, ae, F.

**follow**, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.

**foot**, pēs, pedis, M.; **at the foot of**, sub, *prep. with abl.*

**foot-soldier**, pedes, itis, M.

**for**, prō, *prep. with abl.*

**force**, vīs, vis, F.

**forces**, cōpiae, ārum, F. *pl.*

**ford**, vadum, ī, N.

**forest**, silva, ae, F.

**forget**, oblīvīscor, līvīscī, lītus sum.

**form a plan**, cōsiliū ineō.

**former**, prior, prius.

**fortification**, mūnitiō, ōnis, F.

**fortify**, mūniō, īre, īvī (īī), ītum; cōmmūniō, īre, īvī (īī), ītum.

**fortune**, fortūna, ae, F.

**forum**, forum, ī, N.

**found**, condō, ere, didī, ditum.

**four**, quattuor.

**free**, līber, era, erum.

**free**, līberō, āre, āvī, ātum.

**frequent**, crēber, bra, brum.

**friend**, amīcus, ī, M.

**friendly**, amīcus, a, um.

**friendship**, amīcitia, ae, F.

**from**, ā, ab; dē; ē, ex; *prep. with abl. After verbs of hindering*, quōminus.

## G

gain, cōsequor, sequī, secūtus sum.

Gallic, Gallicus, a, um.

gate, porta, ae, F.

Gaul, Gallia, ae, F.

Gauls, Gallī, ōrum, M. *pl.*

general, commūnis, e.

genius, ingenium, ī, N.

Germans, Germānī, ōrum, M. *pl.*

Germany, Germānia, ae, F.

give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.

glory, glōria, ae, F.

go, eō, īre, īī (īvī), itum.

go forth, ēgredior, gredī, gressus sum.

go out, exeō, īre, īī, itum.

god, deus, ī, M.

goddess, dea, ae, F.

good, bonus, a, um.

gradually, paulātīm.

grain, frūmentum, ī, N.

great, māgnus, a, um; ingēns, entis.

greatest, summus, a, um, *sup. of* superus; māximus, a, um, *sup. of* māgnus.

greatness, māgnitūdō, dinis, F.

guard, custōs, ōdis, M.; praesidium, ī, N.

guard, servō, āre, āvī, ātum.

## H

halt, cōsistō, ere, stitī.

hand, manus, ūs, F.

happen, accidō, ere, cidī.

harass, vexō, āre, āvī, ātum.

harbor, portus, ūs, M.

hasten, contendō, ere, tendī, tentum.

hatred, odium, ī, N.

have, habeo, ēre, uī, itum.

he, *masc. of* is, ea, id.

hear, audiō, īre, īvī (īī), itum.

Helvetian, Helvētius, a, um; Helvetians, Helvētīī, ōrum, M. *pl.*

her (own), suus, a, um.

herself, sē.

hesitate, dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

high, altus, a, um.

higher, superior, ius; altior, ius.

highest, summus, a, um; altissimus, a, um.

hill, collis, is, M.

himself, sē.

hinder, impediō, īre, īvī (īī), itum.

his (own), suus, a, um.

hither, citerior, ius.

hold, teneō, ēre, uī.

home, domus, ūs, F.; at home, domī.

hope, spēs, eī, F.

hope, spērō, āre, āvī, ātum.

horn, cornū, ūs, N.

horse, equus, ī, M.

horseman, eques, itis, M.

hostage, obses, idis, M.

hour, hōra, ae, F.

house, domus, ūs, F.

how great, quantus, a, um.

huge, ingēns, entis.

hundred, one hundred, centum.

hunger, famēs, is, F.

hurl, coniciō, ere, iēcī, iectum.

## I

I, ego, meī.

if, sī; if not, nisi.

**immediately**, statim.  
**immortal**, immortalis, e.  
**in**, in, *prep. with abl.*  
**in behalf of**, prō, *prep. with abl.*  
**incite**, incitō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
**increase**, augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum.  
**incredible**, incredibilis, e.  
**indeed**, quidem.  
**induce**, adducō, ere, dūxī, ductum.  
**infantry**, peditēs, um, M. *pl.*  
**inflict**, inferō, ferre, tulī, illātum;  
**inflict punishment on**, sūmō  
supplicium dē.  
**influence**, auctoritās, ātis, F.;  
grātia, ae, F.  
**inform**, certiōrem faciō, ere, fēcī,  
factum; **be informed**, certior  
fīō, fierī, factus sum.  
**inhabit**, incolō, ere, uī.  
**injury**, iniūria, ae, F.  
**inquire**, quaerō, ere, quaesīvī,  
quaesītum.  
**interval**, spatium, ī, N.  
**into**, in, *prep. with acc.*  
**Italy**, Italia, ae, F.  
**its (own)**, suus, a, um.  
**itself**, sē.

**J**

**javelin**, pīlum, ī, N.  
**join**, coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctum;  
**join battle**, proelium committō,  
ere, mīsī, missum.  
**journey**, iter, itineris, N.  
**judge**, iūdex, dicis, M.  
**just**, iūstus, a, um.

**K**

**keep**, contineō, ēre, uī, tentum;  
retineō, ēre, uī, tentum.  
**keep off**, prohibeō, ēre, uī, itum.

**kill**, caedō, ere, cecidī, caesum;  
interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum; necō,  
āre, āvī, ātum.  
**kind**, modus, ī, M.  
**kindness**, beneficium, ī, N.  
**king**, rēx, rēgis, M.  
**kingdom**, rēgnum, ī, N.  
**know**, intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum;  
sciō, īre, īvī, ītum.

**L**

**Labienus**, Labiēnus, ī, M.  
**labor**, labor, ōris, M.  
**lake**, lacus, ūs, M.  
**land**, terra, ae, F.  
**large**, māgnus, a, um.  
**law**, lēx, lēgis, F.; iūs, iūris, N.  
**lay waste**, vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
**lead**, ducō, ere, dūxī, ductum.  
**lead across**, trāducō, ere, dūxī,  
ductum.  
**lead out**, ēducō, ere, dūxī, ductum.  
**leader**, dux, ducis, M.  
**leading man**, prīnceps, cipis, M.  
**leap down**, dēsiliō, īre, uī, sultum.  
**learn**, cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitum.  
**least**, minimē.  
**leave**, relinquō, ere, liquī, līctum.  
**legion**, legiō, ōnis, F.  
**less**, minus.  
**lest**, nē.  
**letter**, litterae, ārum, F. *pl.*  
**level**, aequus, a, um.  
**liberty**, libertās, ātis, F.  
**lieutenant**, lēgātus, ī, M.  
**life**, vīta, ae, F.  
**like**, similis, e.  
**line of battle**, aciēs, ēī, F.  
**little**, a (*adv.*), paulum; paulō;  
by a little, paulō.



live, vivō, ere, vixī, victum.  
 long, longus, a, um; for a long  
 time, diū.  
 lose, amittō, ere, mīsī, missum.  
 lower, inferior, ius.  
 loyalty, fidēs, eī, F.

## M

made, be, fiō, fierī, factus sum.  
 magistrate, magistrātus, ūs, M.  
 make, faciō, ere, fēcī, factum;  
 make war on, bellum inferō,  
 ferre, tulī, illātum.  
 man, vir, virī, M.; homō, minis, M.  
 manner, modus, ī, M.  
 many, multī, ae, a.  
 march, iter, itineris, N.  
 maritime, maritimus, a, um.  
 master, dominus, ī, M.  
 matter, rēs, reī, F.  
 may, licet, ēre, uit.  
 meanwhile, interim.  
 memory, memoria, ae, F.  
 mention, commemorō, āre, āvī,  
 ātum.  
 messenger, nūntius, ī, M.  
 middle, middle of, medius, a, um.  
 mile, mille passūs; *pl.* mīlia pas-  
 sum.  
 mind, animus, ī, M.  
 Minerva, Minerva, ae, F.  
 money, pecūnia, ae, F.  
 more (*adv.*), magis, amplius.  
 mound, agger, eris, M.  
 mountain, mōns, montis, M.  
 move, moveō, ēre, mōvī, mō-  
 tum.  
 much, multus, a, um.  
 much (*adv.*), multum, multō.

multitude, multitudō, dinis, F.  
 my, meus, a, um.

## N

name, nōmen, minis, N.  
 narrow, angustus, a, um.  
 narrow pass, angustiae, ārum,  
 F. *pl.*  
 nature, nātūra, ae, F.  
 near, prope, *prep. with acc.*  
 nearer, propior, ius.  
 necessary, it is, oportet, ēre, uit.  
 neighboring, finitimus, a, um.  
 neither . . . nor, neque (nec) . . .  
 neque (nec).  
 Nervii, Nervii, ōrum, M. *pl.*  
 never, numquam.  
 nevertheless, tamen.  
 new, novus, a, um.  
 next day, on the, postrīdiē.  
 night, nox, noctis, F.; by night,  
 noctū.  
 night (*adj.*), nocturnus, a, um.  
 no, none, nūllus, a, um.  
 no one, nēmō, (nēminis), M.  
 noble, nōbilis, e.  
 noon, merīdiēs, ēī, M.  
 nor, neque (nec).  
 not, nōn; nē; not at all, nihil.  
 nothing, nihil, N., *indecl.*  
 now, nunc.  
 number, numerus, ī, M.  
 numerous, crēber, bra, brum.

## O

obtain, obtineō, ēre, uī, tentum;  
 obtain (*by request*), impetrō, āre,  
 āvī, ātum.  
 occupy, occupō, āre, āvī, ātum.



ocean, Ōceanus, ī, M.  
 often, saepe.  
 old, vetus, veteris.  
 on, in, *prep. with abl.*  
 one, unus, a, um; the one . . . the  
     other, alter . . . alter.  
 only, solum, a, um.  
 only (*adv.*), solum; not only . . .  
     but also, non solum . . . sed  
     etiam.  
 open, apertus, a, um.  
 open, aperio, ire, ui, pertum; pate-  
     facio, ere, feci, factum; be open,  
     pateo, ere, ui.  
 opinion, opinio, onis, F.; sententia,  
     ae, F.  
 opportunity, facultas, atis, F.  
 or, aut.  
 order, ordo, dinis, M.  
 order, iubeo, ere, iussi, iussum.  
 other, alius, a, ud; the other,  
     alter, era, erum; ceteri, ae, a;  
     the one . . . the other, alter . . .  
     alter.  
 ought, debeat, ere, ui, itum; oportet,  
     ere, uit.  
 our, noster, tra, trum.  
 out of, e, ex, *prep. with abl.*  
 outer, exterior, ius.  
 overcome, vincio, ere, vici, victum.  
 overhang, impendeo, ere.  
 overtake, consequor, sequi, secutus  
     sum.  
 overwhelm, premo, ere, pressi,  
     pressum.

## P

pace, passus, us, M.  
 pacify, paco, are, avi, atum.  
 part, pars, partis, F.

pass, narrow, angustiae, arum,  
     F. *pl.*  
 pass the winter, hiemo, are, avi,  
     atum.  
 peace, pax, pacis, F.  
 people, populus, i, M.  
 perceive, sentio, ire, sensi, sensum.  
 perform, gerio, ere, gessi, gestum.  
 permitted, it is, licet, ere, uit.  
 persuade, persuadeo, ere, suasi,  
     suasum.  
 pitch a camp, castra pono, ere,  
     posui, positum.  
 place, locus, i, M.; *pl.* loca, orum, N.  
 place, pono, ere, posui, positum;  
     constituo, ere, stitui, stitutum;  
     place in command of, praeficio,  
     ere, feci, fectum.  
 plan, consilium, i, N.  
 please, placeo, ere, ui, itum.  
 plenty, copia, ae, F.  
 plot, insidiae, arum, F. *pl.*  
 plunder, praeda, ae, F.  
 plunder, diripio, ere, ui, reptum;  
     praedor, ari, atus sum (*intrans.*).  
 Pompey, Pompeius, i, M.  
 power, imperium, i, N.; potestas,  
     atis, F.  
 powerful, potens, entis.  
 praetor, praetor, oris, M.  
 praise, laudo, are, avi, atum.  
 prefer, malo, malle, malui.  
 prepare, paro, are, avi, atum; com-  
     paro, are, avi, atum.  
 present, be, adsum, esse, fui, fu-  
     turus.  
 press hard, premo, ere, pressi,  
     pressum.  
 prevent, prohibeo, ere, ui, itum.  
 private, privatus, a, um.

procure, comparō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 promise, polliceor, ērī, itus sum.  
 proper, it is, oportet, ēre, uit.  
 protect, servō, āre, āvī, ātum;  
   tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum.  
 protection, praesidium, ī, N.  
 provided that, dummodo.  
 province, prōvincia, ae, F.  
 public, pūblicus, a, um.  
 punishment, poena, ae, F.; suppli-  
   cium, ī, N.

## Q

queen, rēgīna, ae, F.  
 quickly, celeriter.

## R

rampart, vāllum, ī, N.  
 rank, ōrdō, dinis, M.  
 ravage, vexō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 ready, parātus, a, um.  
 rear, novissimum agmen, N.  
 receive, accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum;  
   recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum.  
 recent, recēns, entis.  
 recover, recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum.  
 region, regiō, ōnis, F.  
 reign, rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 reinforcement, subsidium, ī, N.  
 remain, maneo, ēre, mānsī, mān-  
   sum.  
 remaining, reliquus, a, um.  
 remarkable, ēgregius, a, um.  
 remember, meminī, isse.  
 repent, paenitet, ēre, paenituit;  
   I repent, mē paenitet.  
 reply, respondeō, ēre, spondī,  
   spōnsum.  
 report, fāma, ae, F.

report, nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 reputation, opīniō, ōnis, F.  
 rescue, ēripiō, ere, uī, reptum.  
 resist, resistō, ere, stitī.  
 rest, the, cēterī, ae, a; reliquī,  
   ōrum, M. *pl.*  
 restrain, contineō, ēre, uī, tentum.  
 retreat, recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum,  
   *used with reflexive.*  
 return, redeō, īre, iī, itum; rever-  
   tor, revertī, (*revertī, perf. act.*).  
 revolt, mōtus, ūs, M.  
 reward, praemium, ī, N.  
 Rhine, Rhēnus, ī, M.  
 Rhone, Rhodanus, ī, M.  
 right, iūs, iūris, N.  
 right (*adj.*), dexter, tra, trum.  
 river, flūmen, minis, N.  
 road, iter, itineris, N.; via, ae, F.  
 Roman, Rōmānus, a, um; Romans,  
   Rōmānī, ōrum, M. *pl.*  
 Rome, Rōma, ae, F.  
 Romulus, Rōmulus, ī, M.  
 rout, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum.  
 royal power, rēgnum, ī, N.  
 rule, regō, ere, rēxī, rēctum.

## S

safe, incolumis, e.  
 safety, salūs, ūtis, F.  
 sail, nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 sailor, nauta, ae, M.  
 sake, for the, causā (New, § 404 c;  
   Old, § 245 c).  
 same, idem, eadem, idem.  
 savage, ferus, a, um.  
 say, dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum; inquam.  
 scarcely, vix.  
 scout, explōrātor, ōris, M.

sea, mare, is, N.

sea-coast, ōra maritima, F.

second, secundus, a, um.

see, videō, ēre, vidī, vīsum; cōn-  
spiciō, ere, spēxī, spectrum.

seek, petō, ere, īvī (iī), ītum.

seem, videor, ērī, vīsus sum.

seize, occupō, āre, āvī, ātum.

self, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

sell, vëndō, ere, didī, ditum.

senate, senātus, ūs, M.

send, mittō, ere, mīsī, missum;  
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missum.

Sequanians, Sēquanī, ōrum, M. *pl.*

serious, gravis, e.

set out, proficīscor, ficīscī, fectus  
sum.

severe, gravis, e.

severely, graviter.

sharp, ācer, ācris, ācre.

she, *fem. of* is, ea, id.

shield, scūtum, ī, N.

ship, nāvis, is, F.

short, brevis, e.

show, dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātum;  
ostendō, ere, tendī, tentum.

side, latus, eris, N.; from all sides,  
on all sides, undique.

sight, cōnspectus, ūs, M.

signal, sīgnum, ī, N.

since, cum; quoniam.

size, māgnitūdō, dinis, F.

skilled, perītus, a, um.

slaughter, caedēs, is, F.

slave, servus, ī, M.

slavery, servitūs, ūtis, F.

small, parvus, a, um.

so, ita; tam; so great, so much,  
tantus, a, um; so many, tot,  
*indecl.*

soldier, mīles, itis, M.

some, nōnnūllus, a, um; aliquī,  
qua, quod; some one, some-  
thing, aliquis, aliquid; some . . .  
others, aliī . . . aliī.

son, filius, ī, M.

Spain, Hispānia, ae, F.

spare, parcō, ere, pepercī, parsum.

spear, tēlum, ī, N.

speech, ōrātiō, ōnis, F.

speed, celeritās, ātis, F.

standard, sīgnum, ī, N.

state, cīvītās, ātis, F.; rēs pūblica, F.

station, collocō, āre, āvī, ātum.

storm, tempestās, ātis, F.; take  
by storm, expūgnō, āre, āvī,  
ātum.

strength, vīrēs, ium, F. *pl. (of*  
vīs).

strengthen, cōnfirmō, āre, āvī,  
ātum.

strong, firmus, a, um.

subdue, pācō, āre, āvī, ātum.

sudden, repentīnus, a, um.

suddenly, subitō.

suffer, patior, patī, passus sum.

suitable, idōneus, a, um.

Sulla, Sulla, ae, M.

summer, aestās, ātis, F.

supplies, commeātus, ūs, M.

surrender, dēditiō, ōnis, F.

surrender, dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēdi-  
tum.

surround, circumveniō, īre, vēnī,  
ventum; cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnc-  
tum.

sustain, sustineō, ēre, uī, tentum.

swamp, palūs, ūdis, F.

swift, celer, eris, ere.

sword, gladius, ī, M.; ferrum, ī, N.

## T

take, capiō, ere, cēpī, captum;  
sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum.

take a position, cōnsistō, ere, stitī.

take away, ēripiō, ere, uī, reptum.

take by storm, expūgnō, āre, āvī,  
ātum.

temple, templum, ī, N.

ten, decem.

tenth, decimus, a, um.

terms, condiciō, ōnis, F.

terrify, perterreō, ēre, uī, itum.

territory, finēs, ium, M. *pl.*

test, experior, īrī, pertus sum.

than, quam.

that, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud.

that (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod.

that (*conj.*), ut; quīn; that, in  
order that, ut; quō; that, so  
that, ut; that, the fact that,  
quod; that not, quōminus; nē.

their (own), suus, a, um.

themselves, sē.

then, tum.

thence, inde.

there (*adv.*), ibi.

therefore, itaque.

they, *pl. of* is, ea, id.

thing, rēs, reī, F.

think, exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātum;  
putō, āre, āvī, ātum; arbitror,  
ārī, ātus sum.

third, tertius, a, um.

this, hīc, haec, hōc.

thither, eō.

though, cum.

thousand, mille; *pl.* mīlia, ium, N.

(New, § 134 a; Old, § 94 e).

threaten, impendeō, ēre.

three, trēs, tria.

three days, trīduum, ī, N.

through, per, *prep. with acc.*

throw, iaciō, ere, iēcī, iactum; con-  
iciō, ere, iēcī, iectum; throw  
into confusion, perturbō, āre,  
āvī, ātum.

time, tempus, oris, N.; for a long  
time, diū; at the same time,  
simul.

to, ad, *prep. with acc.*

town, oppidum, ī, N.

trader, mercātor, ōris, M.

tribe, gēns, gentis, F.

tribune, tribūnus, ī, M.

trust, cōfidō, ere, fīsus sum.

try, cōnor, ārī, ātus sum; experior,  
īrī, pertus sum.

tumult, tumultus, ūs, M.

two, duo, duae, duo.

## U

under, sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*  
(New, § 220 c; Old, § 152 c).

understand, intellegō, ere, lēxī,  
lēctum.

undertake, suscipiō, ere, cēpī, cep-  
tum.

unexpected, repentīnus, a, um.

unfavorable, inīquus, a, um.

unfriendly, inimīcus, a, um.

unharmcd, incolumis, e.

unless, nisi.

until, dum.

unwilling, invītus, a, um.

unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

uproar, tumultus, ūs, M.

urge on, incitō, āre, āvī, ātum.

use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.

useful, ūtilis, e.

## V

valor, virtūs, ūtis, F.  
 very, *expressed by sup. degree.*  
 victory, victōria, ae, F.  
 vigorous, ācer, ācris, ācre.  
 vigorously, ācriter.  
 village, vīcus, ī, M.  
 violence, vīs, vis, F.  
 virtue, virtūs, ūtis, F.

## W

wage war, bellum gerō, ere, gessī, gestum.  
 wait, exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 wall, mūrus, ī, M.; walls (*of a city*), moenia, ium, N. *pl.*  
 want, inopia, ae, F.  
 wanting, be, dēsum, esse, fuī, futūrus.  
 war, bellum, ī, N.  
 watch, vigilia, ae, F.  
 water, aqua, ae, F.  
 way of approach, aditus, ūs, M.  
 weapon, tēlum, ī, N.  
 what? quid.  
 when, cum; ubi.  
 where, ubi.  
 which, quī, quae, quod.  
 which? what? (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod.  
 while, dum.  
 who? what? quis, quid.  
 who, which, quī, quae, quod.  
 whole, tōtus, a, um.  
 why? cūr; quid.  
 wicked, malus, a, um.

wide, lātus, a, um.  
 widely, lātē.  
 wife, uxor, ōris, F.  
 wild, ferus, a, um.  
 willing, be, volō, velle, voluī.  
 wing (*of an army*), cornū, ūs, N.  
 winter, hiems, hiemis, F.; pass the winter, hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, N. *pl.*  
 wise, sapiēns, entis.  
 wish, volō, velle, voluī.  
 with, cum, *prep. with abl.*; apud, *prep. with acc.*  
 withdraw, dēducō, ere, dūxī, ductum.  
 without, sine, *prep. with abl.*  
 work, opus, eris, N.  
 world, orbis terrārum, F.  
 worthy, dīgnus, a, um.  
 would that! utinam.  
 wound, vulnus, eris, N.  
 wound, vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum.  
 wretched, miser, era, erum.  
 write, scribō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.  
 wrong, iniūria, ae, F.

## Y

year, annus, ī, M.  
 yet, tamen; not yet, nōndum.  
 you, tū, tuī; *pl.* vōs, vestrum or vestrī.  
 your, tuus, a, um; vester, tra, trum.

## Z

zeal, studium, ī, N.













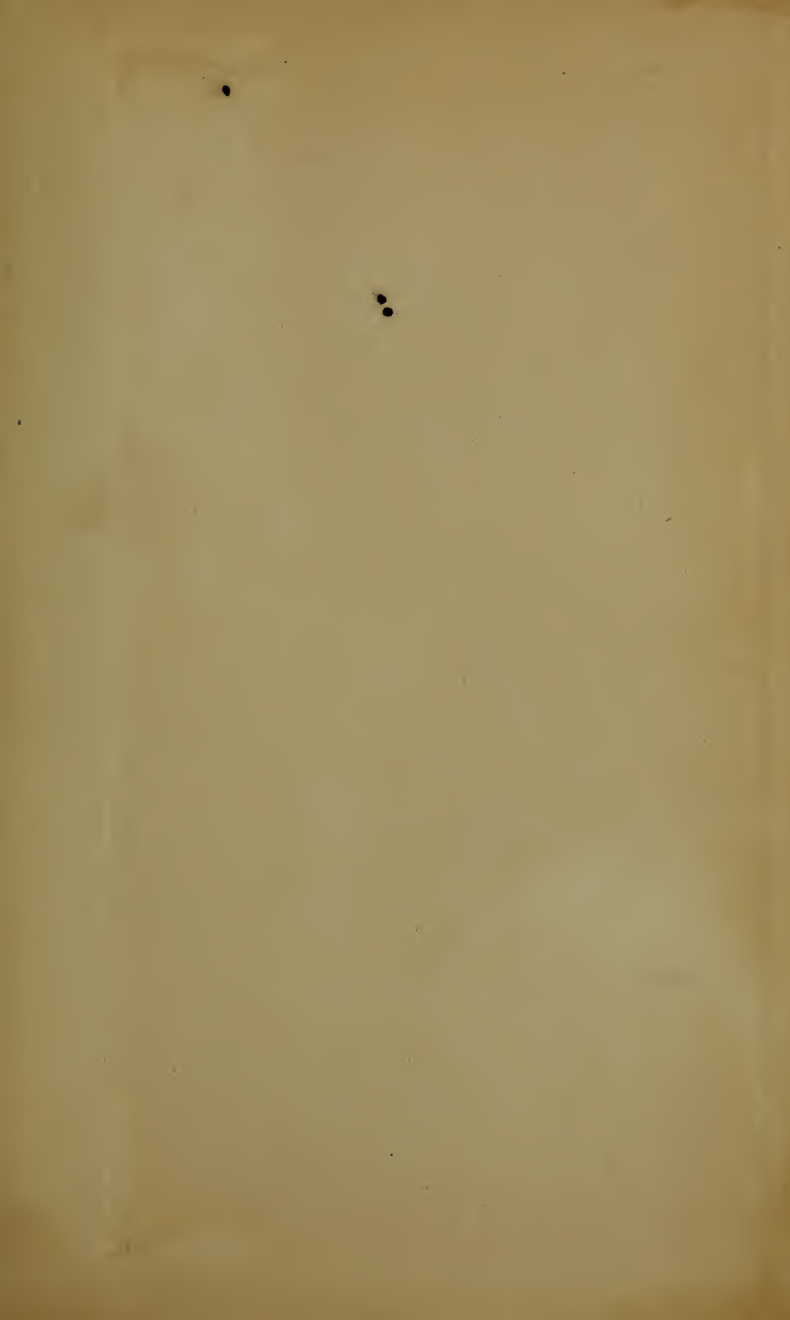




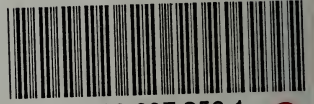




OCT 1 1906



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 037 259 1

